Cheape and Good

HVSBANDRY

For the vvell-Ordering of all Beasts, and Fowles, and for the generall Cure of their Diseases.

K. M. G.
967. c. 4.
2

Contayning the Natures, Breeding, Choise, Vse, Feeding, and Curing of the diseases of all manner of Cattell, as *Horse, Oxe, Cow, Sheepe, Goates, Swine*, and tame-*Conies*.

Shewing further, the whole Art of Riding great-Horses, with the breaking and ordering of them: and the dieting of the Running, Hunting, and Ambling Horse, and the manner how to vse them in their trauaile.

Also, approued Rules, for the Cramming and Fatting of all sorts of Poultry and Fowles, both tame and wilde, &c. And diuers good and well-approued Medicines, for the Cure of all the diseases in Hawkes, of what kinde soeuer.

Together with the Vse and Profit of Bees: the making of Fish-ponds, and the taking of all sorts of Fish.

Gathered together for the generall good and profit of this whole Realme, by exact and assured experience from English practises, *both certaine, easie, and cheape: differing from all former and* forraine experiments, which eyther agreed not with our Clime, or were too hard to come by, or ouer-costly and to little purpose: all which herein are auoyded.

LONDON:
Printed by *T. S.* for *Roger Iackson*, and are to be sold at his Shop neere the Conduit in Fleetstreet. 1616.

Cheap, and Good

HVSBANDRY

For the well-Ordering of all

Beasts, and Fowles, and for the

generall Cure of their Diseases.

Containing the Natures, Breeding, Choice, Vse, Feeding,
and Curing of the Diseases of all manner of Cattell, as Horse,
Oxe, Cow, Sheep, Goats, Swine, and tame-Vermin.

Shewing further, the whole Art of Riding great-Horses, with the
breaking and ordering of them: and the dieting of the Running,
Hunting, and Amling Horse, and the manner how
to vse them in their travaile.

All approved Rules for the Ordering and Fitting of all sorts of
Fowles, and Fowle-houses. And divers good and
approved Receipts for the Cure of all their diseases.

The whole Art of Fishing with all sorts of
nets, and the taking of all sorts of fish.

Gathered together for the generall good and profit of this whole
Realme, by exact and attained experience from English practises,
daily exercise, use, and observe: differing from all former and
forraine writers, which either agreed not with
our Climate, or are too hard to come by,
or over-dear, and to little purpose: all
which are here remedied.

LONDON:

Printed by T. S. for Iohn Harison, and are to be sold at his shop
neere the Conduit in Fleetstreet. 1615.

TO THE RIGHT HONOVRABLE, AND moſt truely ennobled with all inward and outward Vertues, RICHARD SACKVILE, Baron of *Buckhurſt*, and Earle of *Dorſet*, &c.

ALthough the monſtrous ſhapes of Bookes (Right Honourable and beſt ennobled Lord) haue with their diſguiſed and vnprofitable vizard-like faces, halfe ſcared euen Vertue her ſelfe, from that ancient defence and patronage, which (in former ages) moſt Nobly ſhe imployed, to preſerue them from Enuy: yet ſo much I know the largeneſſe of your worthy breaſt is endowed with wiſedome, courage, and bounty, that notwithſtanding the vanities of our ignorant Writers, you will be pleaſed out of your Noble Spirit, fauourably to behold whatſoeuer ſhall bring

bring a publike good to our Countrey; at which end I haue onely aymed in this ſmall Booke. In which, hauing runne farre from the way or tract of other Writers in this nature, yet I doubt not but your Honour ſhall finde my path both more eaſie, more certaine, and more ſafe then any; nay, by much, farre leſſe difficult or dangerous to walk in. I muſt confeſſe, ſomething in this nature I haue formerly publiſhed, as namely of the Horſe *onely; with whoſe nature and vſe I haue beene exerciſed and acquainted from my Childe-hood: and I hope, without boaſt, neede not yeeld to any in this Kingdome. Yet in this worke, I hope, your Lord-ſhip, and all other Princely maintainers of that worthy and ſeruiceable beaſt, ſhall finde I haue found out, and herein explained a nearer and more eaſie courſe for his preſeruation and health, then hath hitherto beene found or practiſed by any, but my ſelfe onely. Whatſoeuer it is, in all humbleneſſe I offer it as a ſacrifice of my loue and ſeruice to your Honour, and will euer whilſt I haue breath to be,*

be your Honours

in all dutifull ſeruice,

G. M.

TO THE COVRTEOVS READER.

THere is no Artiſt or man of Induſtry (courteous and gentle Reader) which mixeth Iudgement with his Experience, but findeth in the trauell of his labours, better and nearer courſes to make perfit the beautie of his worke, then were at firſt preſented to the eye of his knowledge: for the minde being preoccupyed and buſied with a vertuous ſearch, is euer ready to catch hold of whatſoeuer can adorne or illuſtrate the excellency of the thing in which hee is imployed: and hence it hapneth that my ſelfe hauing ſeriouſly beſtowed many yeares to finde out the truth of theſe knowledges, of which I haue intreated in this Booke; haue now found out the infallible way of curing all diſeaſes in Cattell, which is by many degrees more certaine, more eaſie, leſſe difficult, and without all manner of coſt and extraordinary charges, then euer hath beene publiſhed by any home-borne, or forraine practiſer. Wherein (friendly Reader, thou ſhalt finde that my whole drift is to help the needfull in his moſt want and extremitie. For hauing many times in my iourneying ſeene poore and rich mens Cattell fall ſodainely ſicke, ſome trauelling by the way, ſome drawing in the Plough or draught, and ſome vpon other imployments; I haue

alſo

alſo beheld thoſe Cattell or Horſe dye ere they could be brought eyther to Smith, or other place where they might receiue cure; nay, if with much paines they haue beene brought to the place of cure, yet haue I ſeene Smiths ſo vnprouided of Pothecarie ſimples, that for want of a matter of ſixe-pence, a beaſt hath dyed worth many Angels. To preuent this, I haue found out theſe certaine and approued Cures; wherein if euery good Horſe-louer, or Husbandman, will but acquaint his knowledge with a few hearbs and common weedes, hee ſhall be ſure in euery Field, Paſture, Meadow, or Land-furrow; nay, almoſt by euery high-way ſide or blinde ditch, to finde that which ſhall preſerue and keepe his Horſe from all ſodaine extremities. If thou ſhalt finde benefit, thinke mine houres not ill waſted; if thou ſhalt not haue occaſion to approue them, yet giue them thy gentle paſſage to others, and thinke me as I am

Thy Friend,

G. M.

The Table of the first Booke.

Of Beasts.

Of the Horse.

	Page.
Of the Horse in general.	1
Natures of Horse.	2
Choise of Horses, and their shapes.	2
Colours of Horses.	3
Horse for a Princes seat.	3
Horses for trauell.	4
Hunting-horses.	4
Running-horses.	4
Coach-horses.	4
Racke-horses.	5
Cart-horses.	5
Of Mares.	5
Ordering horses for service.	6
Ordering Horses for a Princes seat.	7
Ordering of trauelling-horses	7
Ordering of hunting-horses.	8
Ordering of running-horses.	8
Ordering of Coach-horses.	9
Ordering of the racke or cart-horse.	9
The preseruation of Horses.	10
Of Riding in generall.	10
Imperfect vse of this recreation.	11
The pleasure of Riding.	11
The Authors Apologie.	11
The taming of a yong Colt.	12
His sadling and brideling.	12
His first backing.	13
Three main points of a horsemans skill.	15
Of helps, & which they be.	16
Of Corrections, and which they be.	16
Of Cherishings.	17
Of the Musrole and Martingale.	17
Of treading the large rings.	18
Choise of grounds.	18
Of gallaping large rings.	20
Helps in the large ring turne.	20

Corrections in the long-ring turnes. 21
Cherishings in the ring turnes. 22
Of stopping & going back. 22
Helps. 23
Corrections. 23
Cherishings. 24
Of aduancing before. 24
Helps. 25
Corrections. 25
Cherishings. 26
The vse of Aduancing. 26
Of Yerking behinde. 26
Helps. 27
Corrections. 27
Cherishings. 28
Of Turning. 28
Helps. 30
Corrections. 30
Cherishings. 30
Of the Turning post. 32
Of Managing. 33
Diuersities of manages. 34
Of the Cariere. 34
Horses for pleasure. 35
Of bounding aloft. 35
Of the Cornet. 36
Of the Gallop-Gallard. 37
Of the Carpriolle. 37
Of going aside. 38
Of riding before a Prince. 39
Of the Curuet. 40
To ride for Recreation. 40
Of breeding all sorts of horses fit for the Husband-mans vse. 42
Grounds to breed on. 42
Diuision of Grounds. 43
Choise of the Stallion. 43
Choise of Mares. 43
When to put them together. 43
Of Couering Mares. 44
To know if a Mare hold. 44
To conceiue Male foales. 45
To prouoke lust. 45
To keepe your Mares from barrennesse. 45
Ordering Mares after Couering. 45
A help for Mares in foaling. 46
Ordering Mares after foaling. 46
Weaning of Foales. 46
Ordering after weaning. 46
Gelding of Colts. 47
Of Horses for trauell, & how to make them amble. 47
The markes of a good trauelling Horse. 47
To make a Horse amble. 48
Diuers trayes of ambling. 48
Of Trauelling. 48
Of Wispring. 49
Helps in ambling. 49
The ordering and dieting of the

the Hunting-horſe. 49
Taking vp the hunting-horſe. 50
Cloathing the hunting-horſe. 50
Dreſſing the hunting-horſe. 51
Of watring and feeding the hunting-horſe. 52
The exerciſe of the horſe. 53
The ſcouring of the horſe. 54
Ordering a horſe after exerciſe. 55
Of ordering, dieting, taking vp, cloathing, dreſſing, watring and feeding the running-horſe. 55 & 56
Of his exerciſe by ayring and courſing. 57
Of ſweats. 58
Of ſcouring him. 59
Ordering after exerciſe. 59
Generall rules for a running-horſe. 60
Generall rules for a trauelling horſe. 61
How to cure all inward ſickneſſes, &c. 62
Of the Head-ach, Frenzie, or Staggers. 63
Of the ſleeping euill. 63
Of the Falling-euill, Planet-ſtrucke, Night-mare, or Palſey. 63
Of the generall Crampe, or conuulſion of ſinewes. 64
Of any cold or cough, wet or dry, or for any conſumption or putrifaction of the Lungs whatſoeuer. 65
Of the running glaunders, or mourning of the Chine 65
Of hide-bound, or conſumption of the fleſh. 65
Of the breſt-paine, or any ſickneſſe of the heart. 66
Of tyred horſes. 66
Of diſeaſes of the ſtomacke, as ſurfaits, loathing of meate or drinke. 66
Of Foundring in the body. 67
Of the hungry euill. 67
Of diſeaſes of the Liuer, &c. 68
Of the yeallowes, and diſeaſes of the gall. 68
Of the ſickneſs of the ſpleen. 68
Of the dropſie, or euill habite of the body. 69
Of the Collicke, belly-ake, or belly-bound. 69
Of the laxe or bloody flyx. 69
Of the falling of the fundament. 70
Of Bots, and wormes of all ſorts. 70
Of paine in the kidneyes, paine-piſſe, and ſtone. 70

Of the ſtrangullion. 70
Of piſſing bloud. 71
Of the Colt-euill, mattring of the yard, falling of the yard ſhedding of ſeed. 71
Of the particular diſeaſes in Mares, as barrenneſſe, conſumption, rage of loue, caſting foales, hardnes to foale, and to make a Mare caſt her foale. 71
Of drinking venome, &c. 72
Of ſuppoſitaries, gliſters, and purgations. 72
Of neeſing and frictions. 73
Of all the diſeaſes in the eyes. 73
Of the impoſtume in the eare, pole-euill, fiſtula, ſwelling after bloud-letting, any gald-backe, canker, fit-faſt, wens, nauell-gall, &c. 74
Of the Vines. 74
Of the ſtrangle, bile, botch, or impoſtume. 75
Of the Canker in the noſe, or any other part. 75
Of ſtanching bloud in any part. 75
Of the diſeaſes in the mouth, as bloudy-rifts, Iiggs, lampas, camerie, inflamation, tongue-hurt, or the barbs. 75
Of paine in the teeth, or looſe teeth. 76
Of the cricke in the necke. 76
Of the falling of the creſt, maunginеſſe in the maine, or ſhedding of hayre. 76
Of paine in the withers. 77
Of ſwaying the back, or weakneſſe in the backe. 77
Of the itch in the tayle, ſcab, maungines, or farcie. 77
Of any halting whatſoeuer, &c. 78
Of foundring in the feete. 78
Of the ſplent, curbe, bone-ſpauen, or any knob, or bony excreſſion or ringbone. 79
Of the Mallander, Sellander, Paines, Scratches, Millet, Mules, Crowne-ſcabbe, &c. 79
Of an vpper attaint, or neather, or any ouer-reaching. 80
Of all the infirmities of, in, or about the Hoones, &c. 80
Of the bloud-ſpauen, bough bony, or any other vnnaturall ſwelling. 81
Of Windegals. 81
Of enterfairing, ſhakegall, &c. 82
Hurts on the Cronet, as quilter-bone, or mailong. 82

Of

Of wounds in the foot, gravelling, pricking, figge, pretrait or cloying. 82
To draw out stub or thorne. 82
Of an Auburry or Tetter. 82
Of the cords, or string-halt 83
Of spur-galling, &c. 83
To heale any old sore or wound. 83
Of sinewes cut. 83
Of eating away dead flesh. 83
Of knots in ioynts. 83
Of venemous wounds, &c. 84
Of Lice or Nies. 84
To defend a Horse from flies. 84
Of bowes broke, or out of ioynt. 84
Of drying or skinning sores when they be almost whole 84
A most famous receit, to make a Horse that is leane, & full of inward sickenesse, sound and fat in foureteene dayes. 85
To make a white Starre. 85

Of the Bull, Cow, Calfe, or Oxe.

Page,
OF the Bull, Cow, Calfe, or Oxe, &c. 86
The Countryes for breede. 86
Of not mixing and mixing breeds. 87
The shape of the Bull. 87
The vse of the Bull. 87
The shape of the Cow. 88
The vse of the Cow. 88
Of Calues, and their nourishing. 88
Obseruations for calues. 88
Of the Oxe, and his vse. 89
Of the Oxes foode for labour. 89
Oxen to feed for the Butcher. 89
Page.
To preserue Cattell in health. 90
Of the Feuer in Cattell. 90
Of any inward sickenesse. 91
Of the diseases in the head, as Sturdy, &c. 91
Of all the diseases in the eyes of Cattell, &c. 92
Of diseases in the mouth, as barbs, bleane, &c. 92
Of diseases in the necke, as being galled, bruised, swolne, closh, &c. 93
Of the Pestilence, gargill, or murraine. 93
Of misliking or leanenesse. 94

Of diseases in the guts, as flixe, costinesse, &c. 94
Of pissing blood. 94
Of dropping nostrils, or any cold. 95
Of al manner of swellings. 95
Of the worme in the taile. 95
Of any cough or shortnesse of breath. 95
Of any Impostume, Bile, or Boteh. 95
Of diseases in the sinewes, as weaknes, stifnesse, or soreness. 96
Of the general scab, particular scab, itch, or scurfe. 96
Of the hide-bound, or dry-skin. 96
Of diseases in the Lungs, as Lung-yrowne, &c. 97
Of the biting with a mad dog, or other venemous beast. 97
Of the falling downe of the pallat. 97
Of any paine in the hoofe, as the foule, &c. 98
Of all kindes of bruisings. 98
Of swallowing hens-dung, or any poyson. 98
Of killing Lice or Ticks. 98
Of the dewe-bowle. 99
Of the losse of the end. 99
Of the killing of all sorts of Wormes. 99
Of vomiting blood. 100
Of the Gout. 100
Of Milsing. 100
Of prouoking a beast to pisse. 100
Of the ouer-flowing of the gall. 100
Of a beast that is geared. 101
Of a Cow that is wethered. 101
Of drawing out of thornes or stubs, 101
Of purging of Cattell. 101
Of being shrew-runne. 101
Of faintnesse. 102
Of breeding milke in a Cow. 102
Of bones out of ioynt or broken. 102
Of the rot in Beasts. 102
Of the Pantas. 203
Of all manner of wounds. 103

Of the Sheepe.

Page.
Of Sheep, their vse, choise shape, and preseruation. 104
Of the staple of wooll. 104
Of the choise of Sheepe. 105
Of the leare of Sheepe. 105

The

The shape of sheepe. 105
When Ewes should bring forth. 106
Ordering of Lambs. 106
Needfull obseruations. 107
The preseruation of sheep. 107
The signes to know a sound Sheep, & an vnsound. 108
Of sickneſſe in Sheepe, as the Feauer, &c. 109
Of the generall scab. 109
Of killing Maggots. 109
Of the Red water. 110
Of Lung-sicke, or any cough or cold. 110
Of the Worme in the claw, or in any other part. 110
Of wilde-fire. 110
Of the diseases of the gall, as Choller, Iaundise, &c. 111
Of the tough fleame, or stoppings. 111
Of bones broke, or out of ioynt. 111
Of any sickn-s in Lambs. 111
Of the sturdy, turning euill, or More-found. 112
Of all diseases in the eyes in generall. 112
Of water in a Sheepes belly. 112
Of the tagd or belt sheep. 112
Of the Poxe in Sheepe. 113
Of the wood-euill or crampe. 113
Of making an Ewe lone her owne Lambe, or any other Ewes Lambe. 113
Of licking vp poyson. 113
Of Lambes yeaned sicke. 114
Of making an Ewe to be easily deliuered. 114
Of teeth loose. 114
Of increasing milke. 114
Of the staggers or leuse sickeneſſe. 115
Of all sorts of wormes. 115
Of the losse of the cudde. 115
Of sauing sheepe from the rot. 115
A few precepts for the Shepheard. 116

Of Goates.

Page.

OF Goats; and their Natures. 118
The shape of Goates. 118
The ordering of Goates. 119
Of any inward sickneſſe, as the Peſtilence, &c. 119
Of the Dropsie. 120
Of stopping the teates. 120
Of Goates that cannot kid. 120

Of

Of the Tetter, or dry ſcab. 120
Of guelding Kids. 120
Of the itch in Goates. 121
Of the tuell ſtopping. 121
Of the Staggers. 121

Of Swine.

Page.
OF all manner of Swine. 123
The nature of Swine. 123
Of the choiſe and ſhape of Swine. 124
Of the vſe and profit of ſwine 124
Of the Feuer, or any hidden ſickneſſes in Swine. 126
Of the Murraine, Peſtilence, or Catharre. 126
Of the gall in Swine. 126
Of the Meazels. 127
Of impoſtumes in any part. 127
Of vomiting. 127
Of leanneſſe, miſlike, ſcurfe, or maunginеſſe. 127
Of the ſleeping euill. 128
Page.
Of paine in the Mils. 128
Vnnaturalnes in ſwine 128
Of the Laxe or fluxe. 129
Of the lugging of Swine with dogs. 129
Of the poxe in Swine. 129
Of killing Maggots in any part. 129
Of feeding Swine eyther for Bacon or Lard. 130
Of feeding Swine in wood Countryes. 130
Of feeding ſwine in champain Countries. 130
Of feeding at the Reeke. 131
Of feeding Swine in, or about great Cities. 131
Of feeding hogs for Lard, or Boares for Brawne. 132

Of Conies.

Page.
OF tame Conies in generall. 133
The nature of the Coney. 133
Of Boxes for tame Conies. 133
Of the choiſe and profit of rich Conies. 134
Page.
Of the feeding and preſervation of Conies. 135
Of the rot amongſt Conies. 136
Of madneſſe in Conies. 136

The

The Table of the second Booke.

Of Poultry.

	Page.
Of the Dunghill-Cocke, Henne, Chicken and Capon.	137
Of the Dunghill-Cocke.	137
Of the choise and shape of the Cocke.	138
Of the Henne, her choise and shape.	138
Of setting Hennes.	139
Of the choise of Egges.	140
Of Chickens.	141
Of feeding and cramming Chickens.	142
Of preseruing Egges.	142
Of gathering Egges.	142
Of the Capon, and when to carue him.	143
Of the Capon to lead Chickens	143
Of feeding and cramming Capons.	143
Of the pippe in Poultry.	144
Of the roupe.	144
Of the fluxe.	144
Of stopping in the belly.	144
Of lice in Poultry.	145
Of stinging with venemous wormes.	145
Of all sore eyes.	145
Of Hennes which crow.	145
Of Hennes which eate their Eggs.	145
Of keeping a Henne from sitting.	146
Of making Hennes lay soone and oft.	146
Of making Hennes leane.	146
Of the Crow-troden.	146
Of the Hen-house, and scituation.	146

Of Geese.

	Page.
Of the Goose in generall.	147
Of the choysse of Geese.	148
Of laying Eggs & sitting.	148

Of the ordering of Goslings. 148
Of Greene-Geese, and their fatting. 149
Of Ganders. 149
Of the fatting of elder Geese. 149
Of gathering of Geese-feathers. 149
Of the gargell in Geese. 150

Of Turkeyes.

Page.
OF Turkeyes in generall. 150
Of the choyse of the Turkey-Cocke. 150
Of the Turkey-Hen, and her sitting. 151
Of the feeding of Turkeyes. 151

Of Water-Fowle, and others.

Page.
OF the tame Ducke. 152
Of wilde Duckes, and their ordering. 152
Of Swans, and their feeding. 153
Of Peacocks and Peahennes. 153
Of the tame Pigeon, or rough footed. 155
Of nourishing and fatting Hearnes, Puets, Guls, and Bitters. 156
Of feeding Partridge, Pheasant, and Quaile. 156
Of Godwits, Knots, Gray-Plowers, or Curlewes. 157
Of Blackbirds, Thrushes, Felfares, &c. 158

Of Hawkes.

Page.
OF Hawkes in generall, of all kindes. 159
Of Scourings. 160
Of impostumes in Hawkes. 161
Of sore eyes in Hawkes. 161
Of the Pantas. 162
Of casting the gorge. 162
Of all sorts of wormes or Filanders. 162
Of all swellings in Hawkes feet. 163
Of the breaking of a pounce. 163

Of

Of bones broke or out of ioynt. 163
Of all inward bruisings. 163
Of killing Lice. 163
Of the Rie. 164
Of the Frounce. 164
Of the Rhewme. 165
Of the formicas. 165
Of the Fistula. 165
Of the priuie euill. 166
Of all sorts of wounds. 167
Of the Apoplexie, or falling euill. 167
Of the purging of Hawkes. 168
Of a Hawke that cannot mute 168
The assuredst signes to know when a Hawk is sicke. 169
Of the Feuer in Hawkes. 170
Of helping a Hawke that cannot digest. 170
Of the gout in Hawkes. 170
Of the staunching of bloud. 171

Of Bees.

Page.

OF Bees in generall. 172
Of the nature of Bees. 172
Of the Bee-hiue. 173
Of the trimming of the Hiue. 174
Of the placing of Hiues. 174
Of the casting of Bees, and ordering the swarmes. 175
Of selling Hiues. 176
Of the preseruation of weake stockes. 176
An excellent secret concerning Bees. 177

Of Fishing.

Page.

OF fishing in generall. 178
Of the making of Fishponds. 178
Of the taking of all sorts of Fish, with Nets or otherwise. 180

FINIS.

A SHORT TABLE,

expounding all the hard words *in this Booke.*

A

Auripigmentum, or *Orpment*, is a yellow hard substance to be bought at the Pothecaries.

Aristolochia-longa, otherwise called red *Madder*, is an hearb growing almost in euery field.

Aristolochia-rotunda, is the hearb called *Galingale.*

Agrimonie or *Egrimonie*, is an vsuall and knowne hearbe.

Ameos or *Comin-royall*, is an hearbe of some called *Bulwort*, *Bishops-weed*, or *Hearb-william.*

Anyse is that hearbe which beares *Anyse-seede.*

Auet, of some called *Dill*, is an hearbe like *Fenell*, onely the seedes are broad like *Orenge* seeds.

Agnus-castus, of some called *Tutesaine*, is an hearbe with reddish leaues, and sinewie like *Plantaine.*

Egyptiacum is a reddish *vnguent* to be bought at the Pothecaries, and is soueraigne for *Fistula's.*

Assafetida a stinking strong gumme to be bought at the Pothecaries.

Adraces, or *Adarces*, is that *Salt* which is ingendred on the salt Marshes by the violence of the Sunnes heat after the ryde is gone away.

Asterion is an hearbe growing amongst stones, as on wals, or such like, it appeareth best by night, it hath yellow flowers like *Foxgloues*, and the leaues are round and blewish.

Aloes is a bitter gumme to be bought at the Pothecaries.

B

Betin, or *Beets*, is an hearbe with long broad leaues indented, and growes in hedge-rowes.

Bolarmoniake is a red hard earthy substance, to be bought

at

at the Pothecaries, and is of a cold and binding nature.

Broomewort is an hearbe with browne coloured leaues, and breareth a blew flower, & most commonly growes in woods.

C

Cresses are of two kindes, *water-Cresses* and *land-Cresses*: they haue broad smooth leaues, and the first growes in moist places, the latter in Gardens, or by high-wayes.

Comin, see *Annot*.

Carthamus is an hearbe in taste like *Saffron*, and is called *bastard-Saffron*, or *mocke-Saffron*.

Calamint is an ordinary hearbe, and groweth by ditches sides, by high-wayes, and sometimes in Gardens.

Coleander is an hearb which beareth a round little seed.

Chiues are a small round hearb growing in Gardens, like little young *Onions* or *Scallions* not aboue a wecke old.

D

Diapente, a soueraigne powder made of fiue equall simples, as *Bay-berries*, *Ivory*, *Aristolochia-rotunda*, *Myrrhe*, and *Gentiana*, and may be bought of the Pothecarie.

Dettony is an hearbe called *Pepper-wort*, or *horse-Radish*, and groweth in many open fields.

Dragons is an hearbe common in euery Garden.

E

Elecampane is an hearbe of some called *Horse-helme*, and growes almost in euery field, and euery Garden.

Eyebright is an hearbe growing in euery meadow.

F

Fennegreeke is an hearbe which hath a long slender trayling stalke, hollow within, and sowne in Gardens, but easiest to be had at the Pothecaries.

Ferne Osmund is an hearbe, of some called *Water-ferne*, hath a triangular stalke, and is like *Polipody*, and it growes in boggs, and hollow grounds.

G

Almgale, see *Aristolochia-rotunda*.

H

Horse-mint is an hearbe that growes by waters sides, and is called *Water-mint*, or *Brooke-mint*.

Horsehelme, see *Elecampana*.

Houseleeke is a weede which growes on the tops of houses that are thacht, and are like vnto a small *Hartichoke*.

Hearbe-Robert hath leaues like *Hearbe-Bennet*, and small flowers of a purple colour, & growes in most common fields and Gardens.

I

Ivory is the shauings of the *Elephants* tooth, or the old *Harts* or *Stags* horne, being the smooth white thereof.

K

Knot-grasse is a long running weed, with little round smooth leaues, and the stalke very knotty and rough, winding and wreathing one seame into another very confusedly, and groweth for the most part in very moist places.

L

Lettice is a common sallet-hearbe in euery Garden.

Lollium is that weed which wee call *Cockell*, and groweth amongst the corne in euery field.

Liuerwort is a common hearbe in euery Garden.

M

Mayth is a weed that growes amongst corne, and is called of some *Hogs-Fennell*.

Myrrhe is a gumme to be bought at the Pothecaries.

Mandragg is an hearb which growes in Gardens, and beareth certaine yealow Apples, from whence the Pothecaries draw a soueraigne oyle for broken bones.

N

Neepe, see *Calamint*.

O

Origanum is an hearb called wilde-*Marioram*, and growes both in open fields, or in low copses.

Orifice is the mouth, hole, or open passage of any wound or vlcer.

Opoponax a drug vsuall to be bought at the Pothecaries.

P

Pitch of Burgundy is *Rossen*, and the blacker the better.

Plantaine is a flat leafe and sinewie, growing close to the ground, and is called *Whay-bred* leafe.

Pulioll-royall is an hearbe that groweth both in fields and gardens, and is best when it flowreth.

Patch-greaſe is that tallow which is gotten from the boyling of Shoemakers ſhreads.

Q

Vinqueſolio, of ſome called *Cinqueſoyle*, is that hearbe which is called *Fine-leaued* graſſe.

R

Red-Oaker is a hard red ſtone which we call *Raddle*, *Orell*, *Marking-ſtone*.

S

Sellondine or *Tetterwort*, is a weede growing in the bottome of hedges, which being broke, a yealow iuyce will drop and runne out of it.

Shirwit is an hearbe with many ſmall leaues, and growes moſt in Gardens.

Stubwort is an hearbe which growes in wooddy places, and is called *Wood-Sorrell*.

Sanguis Draconis is a hard red gumme to be bought at the Pothecaries.

Stonecrop is a greene weede growing on the tops of wals.

Sparma-Cete is the ſeed of the *Whale*, excellent for inward bruiſes, and to be bought at the Pothecaries.

Salarmoniake is a drug vſuall to be bought at the Pothecaries.

T

Vſſilaginis is that weed which we call *Colts-foot*.

Treapharmicon a compoſition made of three ſimples, and to be bought at the Pothecaries.

Turmerick is a yealow ſimple, of ſtrong ſauour, to be bought at the Pothecaries.

V

Verdi-greeſe is a greene fatty gumme drawne from *Copper*, and is to be bought at the Pothecaries.

W

Wood-Roſe, or *Wilde-Eglantine*, is that ſmall thin flower which growes vpon *Bryars* in woods or hedges.

Y

Yarrow is an hearbe called the *Water-Violet*, and growes in Lakes or marriſh grounds.

FINIS.

Thine *Garnaſe Markhame*.

The diuision of the Titles entreated of in these Bookes following.

First, of the *Horse*, his Nature, Diseases, and Cures: with the whole Art of Riding, and ordering all sorts of *Horses*, from *fol.* 1. to 86.

2 Of the *Bull*, *Cow*, *Calfe*, or *Oxe*, their breeding, feeding, and curing, from *fol.* 36. to 104.

3 Of *Sheepe*, their choise, vse, shape, infirmities and preseruation, from *fol.* 104. to 118.

4 Of *Goates*, their nature, shape, ordering, and curing, from *fol.* 118. to 123.

5 Of *Swine*, their choise, breeding, curing, and feeding, in eyther Champaine or VVood Countries, from *fol.* 123. to 133.

6 Of tame-*Conies*, from *fol.* 133. to 137.

7 Of *Poultry*, their ordering, fatting, cramming, and curing all the diseases to them incident, from *fol.* 137. to 159.

8 Of *Hawkes*, eyther short-winged, or long-winged, the generall cures for their diseases and infirmities, from, *fol.* 159. to 172.

9 Of *Bees*, their ordering, profit, and preseruation, from *fol.* 172. to 178.

10 Of *Fishing*, and making *Fish-ponds*, from *fol.* 178. to the end.

Published by Authoritie.

THE GENERALL Cure and Ordering of all Horſes:

As alſo the whole Art of riding great Horſes, *with the breeding, breaking, and ordering of them:* Together with the manner how to vſe the running, hunting, and ambling Horſe, before, in, and after their trauaile.

Of the Horſe.

CHAPTER I.

Of the Horſe in generall, his choiſe for euery ſeuerall vſe, his Ordering, Diet, and beſt preſeruation for health, both in trauaile and in reſt.

THE full ſcope and purpoſe of this Worke, is in few, plaine, and moſt vndoubted true words, to ſhew the Cure of all manner of diſeaſes belonging to all manner of neceſſary Cattell, nouriſhed and preſerued for the vſe of man; making by way of demonſtration ſo eaſie and plaine a paſſage to the vnderſtanding and accompliſhment of the ſame, that

not the ſimpleſt which hath priuiledge to be eſteemed no Idiot; nor the pooreſt, if he can make two ſhillings, but ſhall both vnderſtand how to profit himſelfe by the Booke, and at the deareſt rate purchaſe all the receipts and ſimples declared in the whole volume. For in ſober truth, this Booke is fit for euery Gentleman, Huſbandman, and good mans pocket, being a memory which a man carrying about him, wil when it is cald to account, giue a man full ſatisfaction, whether it be in the Field, in the Towne, or any other place, where a man is moſt vtterly vnprouided.

Nature of Horſes.

And now foraſmuch as the Horſe of all creatures is the nobleſt, ſtrongeſt, and apteſt to doe a man the beſt and worthieſt ſeruices, both in Peace and Warre, I thinke it not amiſſe firſt to begin with him. Therefore for his nature in generall: he is valiant, ſtrong, nimble, and aboue all other beaſts moſt apt and able to endure the extreameſt labours; the moiſt qualitie of his compoſition being ſuch, that neither extreame heat doth drie vp his ſtrength, nor the violence of cold freeze the warme temper of his mouing ſpirits, but that where there is any temperate gouernment, there he withſtandeth all effects of ſickneſſe, with an vncontrolled conſtancie. He is moſt gentle and louing to the man, apt to be taught, and not forgetfull when any impreſſion is fixed in his braine. He is watchfull aboue all other beaſts, and will endure his labour with the moſt empteſt ſtomacke. Hee is naturally giuen to much cleanlineſſe, is of an excellent ſent, and offended with nothing ſo much as euill ſauours.

The choiſe of Horſes, and their ſhapes.

Now for the choiſe of the beſt Horſe, it is diuers, according to the vſe for which you will imploy him. If therefore you would haue a Horſe for the Warres,

you

you ſhall chuſe him that is of a good tall ſtature, with a comely leane head, an out-ſwelling fore-head, a large ſparkling eye, the white wherof is couered with his eye-browes, and not at all diſcerned, or if at all, yet the leaſt is beſt; a ſmall thin eare, ſhort & pricking; if it be long, well carried, and euer mouing, it is tollerable; but if dull or hanging, moſt hatefull; a deepe necke, large creſt, broad breaſt, bending ribs, broad and ſtraight chine, round and full buttocke, with his huckle bones hid, a taile high and broad ſet on, neither too thicke nor too thin; for too much haire ſhewes ſloath, and too little too much choller and heate: a full ſwelling thigh, a broad, flat, and leane legge; ſhort paſternd, ſtrong ioynted, and hollow houes, of which the long is beſt, if they be not wierd, and the broad round the worſt.

Colours of Horſes.

The beſt colours are Browne-bay, Dapple-gray, Roand, bright-bay, Blacke with a white nare-foote behinde, white farre-foote before, white rache or white ſtarre, Cheſſe-nut or Sorrell, with any of thoſe markes, or Dunne with a blacke liſt: and of theſe Horſes, for the warres the courſer of Naples is accounted the beſt, but the Turke, the Iennet, the Almaine, Frieſon, or the largeſt of our Engliſh races, or any baſtard of the other races will ſerue ſufficiently.

Horſe for a Princes Seate.

If you will chuſe a Horſe for a Princes Seat, any ſupreame Magiſtrate, or for any great Lady of State, or woman of eminence, you ſhall chuſe him that is of the fineſt ſhape, the beſt reyne, who naturally beares his head in the beſt place, without the helpe of the mans hand, that is of nimbleſt and eaſieſt pace, gentle to get vpon, bold without taking affrights, and moſt familiar and quiet in the company of other horſes: his colour would euer be milke white, with red fraynes, or

without, or elſe faire dapple-gray, with white maine and white taile.

Horſes for trauaile. If you will chuſe a horſe onely for Trauell, euer the better ſhape, the better hope, eſpecially looke that his head be leane, eyes ſwelling outward, his necke well riſen, his chine well riſen, his ioynts very ſtrong, but aboue all, his paſternes ſhort and ſtraight, without bending in his going, and exceeding hollow and tough Houes: let him be of temperate nature, neither too furious, nor too dull, willing to goe without forcing, and not deſirous to runne when there is no occaſion.

Hunting-Horſes. If you will chuſe a horſe for Hunting, let his ſhapes in general be ſtrong and well knit together, making equall proportions; for as vnequall ſhapes ſhew weakneſſe, ſo equall members aſſure ſtrength and indurance. Your vnequal ſhapes are a great head to a little necke, a bigge body to a thinne buttocke, a large limbe to a little foot, or any of theſe contraries, or where any member ſuits not with the whole proportion of the body, or with any limbe next adioyning. Aboue all, let your hunting horſe haue a large leane head, wide noſtrils, open chauld, a bigge weſſand, and the winde-pipe ſtraight, looſe, well couerd, and not bent in the pride of his reyning: the Engliſh horſe is of all the beſt.

Running-Horſes. If you chuſe a horſe for Running, let him haue all the fineſt ſhape that may be, but aboue all things let him be nimble, quicke and fiery, apt to flie with the leaſt motion: long ſhapes are ſufferable, for though they ſhew weakneſſe, yet they aſſure ſodaine ſpeed. And the beſt horſe for this vſe is the Barbary, or his baſtard. Ieners are good, but the Turkes are better.

Coach-Horſes. If you will chuſe a horſe for the Coach, which is called the ſwift draught, let his ſhape be tall, broad and well furniſht,

furniſht, not groſſe with much fleſh, but with the bigneſſe of his bones; eſpecially looke that he haue a ſtrong necke, a broad breaſt, a large chine, ſound cleane limbes, and tough houes: and for this purpoſe your large Engliſh Geldings are beſt, your Flemiſh Mares next, and your ſtrong ſton'd horſes tollerable.

If you will chuſe a horſe for portage, that is, for the Packe or Hampers, chuſe him that is exceeding ſtrong of body and limbes, but not tall; with a broad backe, out-ribs, full ſhoulders, and thicke withers: for if he be thin in that part, you ſhall hardly keepe his backe from galling: be ſure that he take a long ſtride with his feete, for their pace being neither trot nor amble, but onely foote pace, he which takes the largeſt ſtrides goes at the moſt eaſe, and rids his ground ſafteſt. Packe-horſes.

Laſtly, if you will chuſe a horſe for the Cart or Plough, which is the ſlow draught, chuſe him that is of moſt ordinary height; for horſes in the Cart vnequally ſorted, neuer draw at eaſe, but the tall hang vp the low horſe. Let them be of good ſtrong proportion, bigge breaſted, large bodied, and ſtrong limb'd, by nature rather inclind to craue the whip, then to draw more then is needfull. And for this purpoſe Mares are moſt profitable; for beſides the effecting of your worke, they yeerely bring you forth increaſe: therefore if you furniſh your draught with Mares to breed, obſerue in any wiſe to haue them faire fore-handed, that is, good head, necke, breaſt and ſhoulders; for the reſt it is not ſo regardfull, onely let her body be large; for the bigger roome a Foale hath in the dammes belly, the fairer are his members. And aboue all things, obſerue, neuer to put your draught beaſts to the ſaddle, for that alters their pace, and hurts them in their labour. Cart-horſes. Of Mares.

Ordering of Horſes for ſeruice.

Now for the ordering of theſe ſeuerall horſes: firſt for the horſe for ſeruice, during the time of his teaching, which is out of the warres, you ſhal keepe him high and luſtily; his food, much ſtraw and little hay, his prouender cleane drie Oats, or two parts Oats, and one part Beanes or Peaſe, well dried and hard, the quantitie of a pecke at a watring, yet not giuen all at once, but at ſeuerall times. In his dayes of reſt you ſhall dreſſe him betwixt fiue and ſix in the morning, water betwixt ſeauen and eight, and feede from nine till after eleauen: in the after-noone you ſhall dreſſe betwixt three and foure, water betwixt foure and fiue, and giue prouender till ſixe, then litter at eight, and giue food for all night. The night before he is ridden, you ſhall at nine of the clocke at night take away his hay from him, at foure of the clocke in the morning giue him a handfull or two of Oats, which being eaten, turne him vpon his ſnaffle, rub all his body and legges ouer with drie clothes, then ſaddle him, and make him fit for his exerciſe. Soone as he is call'd for to be ridden, waſh his bit in faire water, and put it into his mouth with all other things neceſſarie, draw vp his girths, and ſee that no buckles hurt him: then leade him forth, and as ſoone as hee hath beene ridden, all ſweating as he is, leade him into the ſtable, and firſt rub him quickly ouer with drie wiſps, then take off his ſaddle, and hauing rubd him all ouer with drie cloathes, put on his houſing-cloth, then ſet on the ſaddle againe, and gird it; then leade him forth, and walke him vp and downe in gentle manner, an houre or more, till he be cold: then ſet him vp, and after two or three houres faſting, turne him to his meate: then in the after-noone, curry, rub, and dreſſe him, then water him, and order him as is afore-ſaid.

For

For ordering of the horſe for a Prince, or great Ladies ſeate, let it be in his time of reſt, like vnto the horſe for ſeruice; and in his time of labour like the trauelling horſe, as ſhall be ſhewed inſtantly: onely becauſe he is to be more choiſely kept, I meane in the beautifulleſt manner, his coate lying ſmooth and ſhining, and his whole body without any ſtaine or ill-fauourdneſſe, you ſhall euer when he hath beene ridden, and commeth in much ſweating, preſently haue him into the ſtable, and firſt rub him downe with cleane wiſps, then taking off his ſaddle, with a ſword-blade whoſe edge is rebated, you ſhall ſtroake his necke and body cleane ouer, leauing no ſweat nor filth that can be gotten out; then cloathe him vp, and ſet on the ſaddle, and walke him forth as afore-ſaid: after, order and diet him as you doe other trauelling horſes: drie Oats is his beſt prouender if hee be fat and full; and Oats and Beanes, if hee be poore, or ſubiect to loſe his fleſh quickly. Ordering of Horſes for Princes ſeats.

For your trauelling horſe, you ſhall feede him with the fineſt Hay in the Winter, and the ſweeteſt Graſſe in Summer: his prouender would be drie Oats, Beanes, Peaſe or Bread, according to his ſtomacke: in the time of reſt, halfe a pecke at a watring is ſufficient; in the time of his labour, as much as hee will eate with a good ſtomacke. When you trauaile him, water two houres before you ride, then rubbe, dreſſe, and laſtly feede, then bridle vp, and let him ſtand a quarter of an houre before you take his backe. Trauaile moderately in the morning, till his winde be rack'd, and his limbes warmed, then after doe as your affaires require. Be ſure at night to water your horſe two miles before you come to your iournies end; then the warmer you bring him to his Inne, the better: walke not, Ordering of trauelling Horſes.

nor

nor wash not at all; the one doth beget colds, the other foundering in the feete or body: but set him vp warme, well stopt, and soundly rubbed with cleane litter. Giue no meat whileſt the outward parts of your horſe are hot or wet with ſweat, as the eare-roots, the flanckes, the necke, or vnder his chaps: but being drie, rubbe and feede him according to the goodneſſe of his ſtomacke. Change of foode begetteth a ſtomacke, ſo doth the waſhing of the tongue or noſtrils with vinegar, wine and ſalt, or warme vrine. Stop not your horſes fore-feete with Cowes-dung, till he be ſufficiently cold, and that the bloud and humours which were diſperſed, be ſetled into their proper places. Looke well to his backe, that the ſaddle hurt not, to the girts that they gall not, and to his ſhooes, that they be large, faſt, and eaſie.

Ordering of Hunting-Horſes.

For the ordering of your Hunting-horſe, let him in the time of his reſt haue all the quietneſſe that may be, much litter, much meat, and much dreſſing: water euer by him, and leaue him to ſleepe as long as hee pleaſeth. Keepe him to dung rather ſoft then hard, and looke that it be well-coloured and bright, for darkneſſe ſhewes greaſe, and redneſſe inward heating. Let exerciſes and maſhes of ſweet Mault after, be his vſuall ſcowrings, and let bread of cleane Beanes, or Beanes and Wheat equally mixt, be his beſt food, and Beanes and Oates the moſt ordinary.

Ordering of Running-Horſes.

For the ordering of your Running-horſe, let him haue no more meat then to ſuffice nature, drinke once in foure and twentie houres, and dreſſing euery day once at Noone onely. Let him haue much moderate exerciſe, as morning and euening airings, or the fetching of his water, and know no violence but in his courſes onely. Let him ſtand darke and warme, haue many

cloathes

cloathes and much litter, being wheat ſtraw onely. If he be very fat, ſcoure oft; if of reaſonable ſtate, ſcoure ſeldome; if leane, then ſcoure but with a ſweet maſh onely. Be ſure your horſe be empty before he courſe, and let his food be the fineſt, lighteſt, and quickeſt of digeſtion that may be: the ſweats are moſt wholeſome that are giuen abroad, and the cooling moſt naturall which is before he come into the ſtable. Keepe his limbes with coole oyntments, and by no meanes let any hot ſpices come in his body: if hee grow drie inwardly, waſh't meate is wholeſome. If hee grow looſe, then giue him ſtraw in more abundance. Burning of ſweet perfume in the ſtable is wholeſome; and any thing you either doe about your horſe, or giue vnto your horſe, the more neate, cleanly, and ſweete that it is, the better it nouriſheth.

Ordering of Coach-horſes.

For ordering the Coach-horſe, let him haue good dreſſing twiſe a day, Hay and Prouender his belly full, and Litter enough to tumble on, and hee cannot chuſe but proſper. Let them be walk't and waſh't after trauell, for by reaſon of their many occaſions to ſtand ſtill, they muſt be inur'd to all hardneſſe, though it be much vnwholeſome. Their beſt foode is ſweet Hay, and well-dried Beanes and Oates, or Beane-bread: looke well to the ſtrength of their ſhoes, and the galling of their harneſſe: keepe their legges cleane, eſpecially about the hinder fetlocks, and when they are in the houſe, let them ſtand warmely cloathed.

Ordering of the Packe and Cart-horſe.

For the ordering of the Pack-horſe or the Cart-horſe, they neede no waſhing, walking, or houres of faſting; onely dreſſe them well, looke to their ſhoes and backes, and then fill their bellies, and they will doe their labour. Their beſt food is ſweet Hay, Chaffe and Peaſe,

or Oate-huls and Peaſe, or chopt Straw and Peaſe mixt together: once a weeke to giue them warme Grains and Salt is not amiſſe, for their labour will preuent the breeding of wormes, or ſuch like miſchiefes.

For the preſeruation of all horſes.

Now for the generall preſeruation of horſes health, it is good whilſt a horſe is in youth and ſtrength, to let him bloud twiſe in the yeare, that is, beginning of the Spring, and beginning of the Fall, when you may beſt afford him a weekes reſt. After you haue let him bloud, two dayes after, giue him a comfortable drench, as two ſpooneſuls of *Diapente*, or ſuch like, (which is called Horſe *Methridate*) in a quart of ſtrong Ale. Vſe oft to perfume his head with Frankincenſe, and in the heate of Summer vſe oft to ſwimme him. Let a fat horſe drinke oft, and a little at once, and a leane horſe whenſoeuer he hath appetite. Much rubbing is comfortable, and cheareth euery member. Be ſure to let your horſe eate Graſſe once in the yeere, for that cooleth the bloud, ſcoureth away groſſe humours, and gines great ſtrength and nouriſhment vnto the body. If notwithſtanding all theſe principles your horſe fall into ſickneſſe and diſeaſe, then looke into the Chapters following, and you ſhall finde the trueſt, beſt approued, and the moſt familiar medicines for all manner of infirmities, that euer were knowne or publiſhed.

Chap. II.

Of Riding in generall, and of all the particular knowledges belonging to the Art of Riding of a great Horſe, or Horſe for ſeruice or pleaſure.

HAuing ſpoken ſomething already of horſes; it now followes wee ſay ſomething of the commendable exerciſe of riding of great horſes, which in the very acti-

on it ſelfe ſpeaketh Gentleman to all that are performers or doers of the ſame. And although our Engliſh Gentry from a ſloath in their induſtrie, aime for the moſt part at no more skill then the riding of a ridden and perfect horſe, which is but onely the ſetting forth of another mans vertue, and thereby making themſelues richer in diſcourſe then action; yet our Engliſh huſband-man, or good man, whom I ſeeke to make exact and perfect in all things, ſhall not onely recreate himſelfe by riding the horſes whom other men haue made perfect, but ſhall by his owne practiſe bring his horſe from vtter ignorance to the beſt skill that can be deſired in his motions, wherein he ſhall finde a two-fold pleaſure, the one, an excellent contentment to his minde, that he can performe ſo worthy an action without the chargeable aſſiſtance of others; and the other a healthfull ſupport to his body, when by ſuch recreation his ſpirits and inward faculties are reuiued and inflamed. But now mee thinkes I heare ſome ſay, that I haue vtterly taken away the tune of this ſtring, I haue ſtricken ſo oft vpon it, and that indeede there can be no delight where there is no variation: and that ſurely I cannot vary any more vpon this plaine-ſong, but the world will finde diſcord either in this, or my former deſcants. But let them not deceiue themſelues; for my building ſtandeth on a firme rocke, and I know both ſhall be worthily iuſtifiable: only this I muſt informe all men, that in times paſt, long ſince, when our firſt rules of Horſemanſhip were giuen vnto vs, our Maſters were not ſo skilfull in the abilities of horſes performances as we are, but meaſurd them by the proportions of their owne weaker natures, and thence became ſo too much tender ouer them, that they neither reſpected the greatneſſe of their owne labours, nor the length of time,

Imperfect vſe of this recreation.

The pleaſure of riding.

The Authors Apologie.

before they assumed to their desires, so in the end they might aspire to their wishes with safetie and full satisfaction: whence it came to passe that in those times, and euen now in these, (chiefly amongst those which are meerely Riders, and no Keepers) there is no lesse time allowed to the making vp of a perfect horse, then two yeeres, when we know, and my selfe from experience can iustifie the same, that if the Rider can keepe as well as ride, that is, giue as well directions for the preseruation of a horses health, and the auoidance of sturrance and sickenesse, as put in practise artfully euery violence to be vsed in his lessons, hee may very well make vp a perfect horse in three months, fit either for pleasure or battaile, which is the full scope and end of this Treatise: wherein I would not haue any man expect either new rules, or a contradiction of any already set downe by men of practice and knowledge in the Art; but onely a straightning or drawing of them together into a much narrower compasse, giuing satisfaction to our desires, and finishing vp our worke with speede; which before was almost lost or neglected with the length of our labours, as you shal fully perceiue by this discourse which followeth.

The taming of a young Colt.

First then to speak of the taming of a yong colt, which is as it were the preface or introduction to the Art of riding: you shall after he hath beene in the house a weeke or a fortnight, and is familiar with the man, & wil withal patiently endure currying, combing, rubbing, clawing, and handling in euery part and member of his body, without any shew of rebellion or knauishnesse, which you shall compasse by all gentle and easie meanes, doing nothing about him sodainly or rashly, but with leisure and moderation: then you shal offer him a saddle, which

His sadling and bridling.

you

you ſhall ſet in the manger before him, that he may ſmell to it, and looke vpon it, and you ſhall gingle the girths and ſtirrops about his eares, to make him careleſſe of the noiſe: then with all gentleneſſe, after you haue rubd his ſides therewithall, you ſhall ſet it on his backe, and gird it gently on, and then place his crooper with all eaſe; which done, you ſhall take a ſweet walking trench, waſht, and annointed with hony and ſalt, and put it into his mouth, placing it to hang directly about his tuſh, and as it were a little leaning therupon: this you ſhall doe in the morning as ſoone as you haue dreſt him, and then thus ſadled and bridled you ſhall leade him forth, and water him in your hand abroad: then bringing him in, and after he hath ſtood a little reyned vpon his trench, an houre or more, take away the bridle & ſaddle, and let him goe to his meate till the euening: then leade him forth (as before) with the ſaddle to the water, then when he is ſet vp gently, take off his ſaddle & cheriſh him, and then dreſſe him, and cloath him vp for all night. The next day ſaddle and bridle him as before ſaid, & put on him a ſtrong muſtroll of writhen Iron, and a martingal, which you ſhall buckle at ſuch length, that hee may no more but feele it when he ierketh vp his head, and then leade him forth into ſome new plowed field, or ſoft ground, and there after you haue made him trot a good ſpace about you in your hand, and thereby taken away from him all his wantonneſſe and knauiſh diſtractions, you ſhall offer your foot to the ſtirrop, at which if hee ſhew any diſtaſte, either in body or countenance, you ſhall then courſe him about againe: then offer again, and with leiſure riſe halfe way vp, and goe downe againe: at which if he ſhrinke, correct him as before, but if he take it patiently, then cheriſh him, and ſo mount into the

The firſt backing.

ſaddle, which done, after cheriſhing, light downe againe, and giue him bread, or graſſe to eate: then looke that your girths be well girted, and ſtrait, that the crooper be ſtrong and of iuſt length, that the bridle hang euen, and in his due place, without inward or outward offence, that your ſtirrops be fit, and generally all things without offence, either to your ſelfe or to the beaſt, and then as before, mount his backe, ſeat your ſelfe iuſt and euen in the ſaddle, make the reynes of your bridle of equall length, carry your rod without offence to his eye in your right hand, the point either directly vpright, or thwarted towards your left ſhoulder; then hauing cheriſht him, let the Groome which before led him, hauing his hand on the chaffe halter, leade him forward a dozen or twenty paces, then gently ſtraining your hand, with the helpe of the footman, make him ſtand ſtill, then cheriſh him, and leade him forward againe, and doe this fiue or ſixe times one after another, til by continuall vſe you make him of your owne accord (without the footmans helpe) by giuing your body, and thruſting your legges forward, go forward, which as ſoone as he doth, you ſhal ſtay him, and cheriſh him, and then ſitting on his backe, let your footman leade him home, and bring him to the block, where after you haue cheriſht him, you ſhal gently alight, and cauſe him to be led vp, and well dreſt & meated. The next day you ſhall bring him forth as before, and in all points take his back as aforeſaid, and ſo by the helpe of the footman trot him forth right halfe a mile at leaſt, then let the footman lay off his hand, and walke by him, til you haue of your ſelfe trotted him forth another halfe mile, then cheriſh him, and make the footman giue him ſome graſſe or bread to eate, and then taking a large compaſſe, trot him home, and bring him to the

blocke

blocke as before, and there alight, and ſo ſet him vp.

The third day let your footman light vpon ſome ſpare ride, and then bringing your colt to the blocke, take his backe gently, and after you haue cheriſht him, the other riding before you, follow him forthright a mile or two, euer & anone at the end of twenty or thirty ſcore, ſtopping the colt gently, cheriſhing him, and making him yeeld and goe backe a ſtep or two, and then putting him forward againe, till he be ſo perfect, that with the leaſt motion he will goe forward, ſtop, and retire, which will be effected in two dayes more: in which ſpace if hee chance at any time to ſtrike or rebell, you ſhall make him which rides before you take the ſpare reyne, and leade him forward, whileſt you giue him two or three good laſhes vnder the belly, and then being in his way, take the ſpare reyne to your ſelfe againe: and thus you ſhall doe till all faults be amended: then you ſhall ſpare your horſeman or guide, & only by your ſelfe for three or foure dayes more, trot him euery morning and afternoone, at leaſt three or foure miles forward, vſing him onely to ſtop and retire, and bringing him home a contrary way to that you went forth, till hee be ſo perfect and willing, that hee will take his way how or in what manner your ſelfe pleaſeth, euer obſerung to mount and diſmount at the blocke onely, except ſome ſpeciall occaſion conſtraine you to the contrary. This you may well bring to paſſe the firſt weeke of the horſes riding.

The three main points of a Horſemans skill.

As ſoone as you ſee your horſe will receiue you to his backe, trot forth-right, ſtop and retire, and doe all this with great patience & obedience, you ſhal then call into your mind the three maine points of a Horſmans knowledge, which are helps, corrections, and cheriſhings: and for helps, they conſiſt in theſe: Firſt the voice, which ſounding

Of helps, and which they be.

ſounding ſharply and cheerefully, as crying *Via, how, hey*, and ſuch like, adde a ſpirit and liuelineſſe to the horſe, and lend a great helpe to all his motions: then the bridle, which reſtrained or at libertie, helps him how to do, and ſhewes which way to doe: then the rod, which being only ſhewed, is a helpe to direct; being only moued, helps the quickneſſe and nimbleneſſe of the motion; and being gently toucht withall, helps the loftineſſe of a horſes ſalts and leapes, and makes him as it were gather all his ſtrength into one point: and laſtly, the calues of the legs, ſtirrop-leather, and ſtirrops, which moued by the horſes ſide, helps him to nimblenes, ſwiftnes, & readines in turning. Some to theſe helps adde the helpe of the ſpurre, chiefly in high ſalts or boundings, but it muſt be done in a iuſt and true time, and with ſuch gentle bitternes, that the horſe may vnderſtand it for a helpe, or elſe he will take diſtaſte, & finding it ſauour like correction, in ſtead of bettering his doings, do with more diſorder, as to ſpraule with his forefeet in aduancing, to yerke out with one or both his hinder feet in the coruet or bounding, ſhaking of his head, and ſuch like, as will appeare in practice.

Of corrections, and which they be.

Now of corrections the moſt principall is the ſpurre, which muſt not at any time be giuen triflingly, or itchingly, but ſoundly and ſharply as oft as iuſt occaſion ſhal require: then the rod, which vpon diſorder, ſloth, or miſcarriage of the members, muſt be giuen alſo ſoundly: then the voice, which being deliuered ſharply & roughly, as *ha villaine, carikro, diablo*, and ſuch like threatnings, terrifieth the horſe, and maketh him afraid to diſobey: and laſtly the bridle, which now and then ſtricken with a hard chocke in his mouth, reformeth many vices and diſtemperatures of his head; yet this laſt muſt be done

ſeldome,

ſeldome, and with great diſcretion; for to make a cuſtome thereof, is a ready way to ſpoile a horſes mouth.

Now of cheriſhings there are generally in vſe but three, as firſt the voice, which being deliuered ſmoothly and louingly, as crying *holla, ſo boy, there boy there*, and ſuch like, giues the horſe both a cheerefulneſſe of ſpirit, and a knowledge that he hath done well: then the hand, by clapping him gently on the necke or buttocke, or giuing him graſſe or other foode to eate after hee hath pleaſed you: and laſtly, the bigge end of the rod, by rubbing him therewith vpon the withers or maine, which is very pleaſing and delightfull to the horſe. Of cheriſhings.

Now after theſe ordinary and actuall helps, corrections, and cheriſhings, you ſhall haue reſpect to the muſrole and martingale, which carry in them all the three former both ſeuerall and vnite: for it is firſt an eſpeciall helpe and guide to euery well-diſpoſed horſe, for ſetting of his head in a true place, forming of his reyne, and making him appeare comely and gallant in the eyes of the beholders; then it is a ſharpe correction when a horſe yerketh out his noſe, or diſordereth his head any way, or ſtriueth to plunge or runne away with his Rider: and laſtly, it is a great cheriſhing to the beaſt, when hee yeeldeth his head to your hand, by ſhrinking from his face, and ſo leauing any more to torment him, but when hee offendeth; whence it comes that more from this then any thing elſe, the horſe firſt gaineth the knowledge of his maſters will, and is deſirous to performe it: therefore you ſhall be very carefull to the placing of this vpon the horſe, as firſt, that it hang ſomewhat low, and reſt vpon the tender griſſell of the horſes noſe, whereby the correction may be the ſharper when occaſion requires it; then that it be looſe and not ſtrait, Of the muſrole and martingale.

whereby the horſe may feele vpon the yeelding in of his head, how the offence goeth from him, and ſo know that onely his owne diſorder is his owne puniſhment. Laſtly, he ſhall be carefull to note how he winneth the horſes head, and by thoſe degrees to draw his martingale ſtraiter and ſtraiter, ſo as the horſe may euer haue a gentle feeling of the ſame, and no more, till his head and reyne be brought to that perfection which you deſire, and then there to ſtay, and keepe the martingale conſtantly in that place onely, which you ſhall performe in thoſe few dayes which you trot your horſe forth-right, being before you bring him to any leſſon, more then the knowledge of your ſelfe, and how to receiue you to his backe, and trot forth obediently with you.

Of treading the large rings.

When your horſe is brought vnto ſome certaintie of reyne, wil trot forth-right with you at your pleaſure, and by your former exerciſe therin is brought to breath and delight in his trauell, which will grow and increaſe vpon him, as you grow and increaſe in your labour, then you ſhall bring him to the treading forth of the large rings in this manner: Firſt, if he be of heauy and ſluggiſh nature, ſlothfull and dull, and albeit he haue ſtrength and ſufficiencie of body, yet you finde him ſlouenly and vnapt, then you ſhal trot him into ſome new plow'd field, ſoft and deepe: but if he be of quicke and of fiery ſpirit, apt, nimble, and ready to learne, then you ſhall trot him into ſome ſandy or grauelly place, where is ſtrong and firme foot-hold, and there you ſhall marke out a ſpacious large ring, at leaſt threeſcore or foureſcore paces in compaſſe, and hauing walkt him ſixe or ſeauen times about the ſame on your right hand, you ſhall then by a little ſtraitning of your right reyne, and laying the calfe of your left legge to his ſide, make a halfe-circle

Choice of ground.

within

within your ring vpon your right hand, downe to the center or mid point thereof, and then by ſtraitning your left reyne a little, and laying the calfe of your right legge to his ſide, make another halfe circle to your left hand, from the center to the outmoſt verge, which two halfe circles contrary turned, will make a perfect Roman S. within the ring; then keeping your firſt large circumference, walke your horſe about on your left hand, as oft as you did on your right, and then change within your ring as you did before to your right hand againe, & then trot him firſt on the right hand, then on the left, ſo long as you ſhall thinke conuenient. And although our ancient Maſters in this Art haue preſcribed vnto vs certaine numbers of ring-turnes, and how oft it is meet to goe about on either hand, as if all horſes were of one euen abilitie, yet I would wiſh you to neglect thoſe rules, and onely to practice your horſe in this leſſon, according to his ſtrength of body, ſometimes applying him therein an houre, ſometimes two, & ſometimes three, more or leſſe according to your diſcretion; for the ſpace of time can neither bring wearineſſe nor tiring: and for your change of hands, you ſhall do it as oft as ſhal ſeeme beſt to your ſelfe, being euer very carefull to giue him the moſt exerciſe on that hand, on which he is euer moſt vnwillingeſt to goe: and in this leſſon be carefull alſo that hee doe it cheerfully, luſtily, and nimbly, quickning and inflaming his ſpirits by all the means poſſible: and when you finde that he wil trot his large rings perfectly, which wil queſtion leſſe be in leſſe then a weeks ſpace, being well applied therein, for you muſt not fore-ſlow any morning except the Sabbaoth, nay hardly any after-noone: alſo if you find him ſlothfull and heauy, for there is no greater hinderance then the Riders too much tendernes, nor no

greater furtherance then a continual moderate exercise: therefore as I ſaid, when he will trot his rings well, then in the ſame manner, and with the ſame changes, you ſhal make him gallop the ſame rings, which he ſhall doe alſo with great dexteritie, lightneſſe, and much nimbleneſſe, without loſing the leaſt part or grace of his beſt reyne, nay ſo carefull you ſhall be thereof, that in his galloping you ſhall as it were gather his body togeather, and make his reyne rather better then it was, and make him take vp his feet ſo truly and loftily, that not any eye may ſee or perceiue a falſhood in his ſtroke, but that his inward feet play before his outward, and each of a ſide follow the other ſo directly, that his gallop may appeare as the beſt grace of all other motions: neither ſhall you enter him into this leſſon raſhly and haſtily, but ſoberly and with diſcretion, making him firſt gallop a quarter of the ring, then halfe, then three parts, and laſtly the whole ring: neither ſhal you force him into his gallop with violence, or the ſharpnes of ſpurs, but with ſpirit & mettal, making him by the lightnes and cheerefulnes of your owne body, paſſe of his own accord into his gallop, and eſpecially in his changes, where you may let him feele your legge, and ſhew him your rod on the contrary ſide: and herein is to be noted, that continually thoſe changes (in as much as they are made in a much ſtraiter compaſſe) muſt be done euer with great quickneſſe and more ſtirring nimbleneſſe then the intire leſſon.

Of galloping large rings.

Now for the helps neceſſary in theſe large ring-turnes, they conſiſt generally in the voice, rod, calues of your legs, and the bridle: in the voice by quickning him vp, and reuiuing his ſpirits when he growes ſlothfull, with theſe words, *How, hey*, or *vis*: in the rod, by ſhewing it him on the contrary ſide, or laying it on the contrary ſhoulder,

Helps in the large ring-turnes.

ſhoulder, and ſometimes by ſhaking it ouer his head (which is a kinde of threatning) chiefly when you make your changes in the calues of your legs, when you clap them hard to the contrary ſide to which he turneth, or by ſpringing and ierking your legs forward, hard vpon your ſtirrop-leathers, which will quicken him, and make him gather vp his limbs better then the ſpurre by many degrees: and laſtly in the bridle, by drawing it in a little ſtraiter, and holding it with ſome more conſtancie, when you put any of your former helps in vſe, or doe any thing with more life or courage, for that maketh him draw his limbes together, and to ſtraiten his rings with a graceſull comelineſſe.

Corrections in the ring-turnes.

For the corrections in theſe large rings they be diuers; as namely, the bridle, the ſpurre, and the rod, and ſometimes the voice, yet that but ſeldome: for the bridle, you ſhall correct your horſe therewith if he carrie his head or chaps awry, making as it were mowes and ill-fauoured countenances, giuing him now & then a little checke in the mouth, and awakening him from ſuch forgetfull paſſions, or now and then drawing the trench to and fro in his mouth, which will reforme the errour; then the ſpurre, which muſt be laid ſharpe and hard to his ſides, when you finde your helps will doe no good, but that his ſloath rather more and more increaſeth, or when he preſſeth and hangeth hard vpon your hand, or looſeth the tutch of his reyne, or ſuch like vices: for the rod, when you finde that hee neglecteth the ſhewing or ſhaking of it, or when hee diſordereth any of his hinder parts, and will not gather them vp comely together, then you ſhall therewith giue him a ſound laſh or two vnder the belly, or ouer the contrarie ſhoulder, and to any of theſe former corrections you

ſhall euer accompany the threatning of your voice, when the fault is too much foule, and not otherwiſe, becauſe there ſhould be euer an entire loue betwixt the horſe and the horſe-man, which continuall chiding will either take away, or at leaſt root out the apprehenſion thereof.

Cheriſhing in the ring-turne.

Now for your cheriſhings, they are thoſe which I formerly ſpake of; onely they muſt be vſed at no time but when your horſe doth well, and hath pleaſed your mind both with his cunning and tractablenesſe: and although the time for the ſame be when hee hath finiſhed his leſſons, yet there is a ſecret pleaſing and cheriſhing of a horſe with the bridle, which muſt be exerciſed in the doing of his leſſons, and that is the ſweetning of his mouth, by a little eaſing of your bridle hand, and gently drawing it vp backe againe, letting it come and goe with ſuch an vnperceiued motion, that none but the beaſt may know it.

Of ſtopping and going backe.

When your horſe can trot & gallop theſe large rings with all perfectneſſe, which with good induſtrie will be perfected in leſſe then a fortnights exerciſe, you ſhall then proceed to make him ſtop faire, comely, and without danger, which you ſhall doe in this manner: Firſt, as ſoone as you haue taken his backe, cheriſh him, put him gently forward, and bring him into a ſwift trot; after you haue trotted him forty or threeſcore yards forward, you ſhall by drawing in your bridle-hand ſtraitly and ſodainly, make him gather his hinder-legs and fore-legs together, and ſo in an inſtant ſtand ſtill, which as ſoone as he doth, immediatly you ſhall eaſe your hand a little, yet not ſo much as may giue him libertie to preſſe forward, but rather to yeeld backward, which if you finde he doth, you ſhall giue him more libertie, and cheriſh

riſh him, and then hauing pauſed a while, draw in your bridle-hand, and make him goe backe two or three paces, at which if he ſticke, inſtantly eaſe your hand, and draw it vp againe, ſetting it come and goe till hee yeeld and goe backward, which (for the moſt part) all horſes at the firſt will doe: but if it be that your horſe rebell and will not goe backe with this gentle admonition, you ſhall then cauſe a foot-man ſtanding by to put him backe with his hand, and in his motion you ſhall cheriſh him, that he may vnderſtand what your will is: and thus euery time you make him ſtop, you ſhall make him retire backe, till in one ſpace of time you haue made both leſſons perfect: and this practice you ſhall vſe both till you come to your large rings, and at euery time that you finiſh your leſſon, or giue the horſe breath or eaſe; whereby you ſhall perceiue that your horſe ſhall learne to trot and gallop the large rings, to ſtop and retire back all in one ſpace of time, becauſe you ſee ſucceſſiuely they follow one another, and are to be done (though three) but as one entire leſſon.

Now for the helpes in theſe leſſons, the beſt for ſtopping is the choice of ground, as by making your horſe euer to ſtop down the ſloape of ſome hill, or deſcending ground, whereby he may be compeld to couch his hinder loines the better, and ſo make his ſtop moſt comely, and to obſerue that the ground be firme and hard, without danger of ſliding, leaſt the horſe finding ſuch an imperfection, grow fearefull, and ſo refuſe to do your will out of his owne danger. In retiring you ſhall helpe him with your rod, by putting it before his breaſt, or ſhaking it before his knees, to make him remoue his feete more quicke and nimbly. Helps.

For corrections in ſtopping, it muſt ſometimes be done Corrections.

done by your ſelfe, as with the euen ſtroke of your ſpurs when in his ſtop hee diſordereth his head, or with any one ſingle ſpurre, when he caſteth out his hinder loines, and will not ſtop right in an euen line; and ſometimes it muſt be done by another by-ſtander, when he refuſeth to ſtop at all, who ſtanding at the place of ſtop, as ſoone as you draw vp your hand, ſhall with his rod threaten the horſe, and make him not dare to preſſe forward, or if he doe preſſe forward, to make him retire ſwiftly backe ſo much ground as hee gained, both your ſelfe and the by-ſtander rating him with your voices extremely: for corrections in retiring, they are the euen ſtrokes of both your ſpurres when he ſticks or preſſes vpon your hand, and will not yeeld backe; & alſo your rod ſtrike ſharply vpon his knees and breaſt, and the rod of a by-ſtander ſtrike vpon his breaſt, knees and face, when his ſtubbornneſſe is too violent.

Cheriſhings

But for his cheriſhings, they be all formerly ſpoke of, when your will is comely and obediently performed, beſides the addition of ſome other, as a preſent eaſing of your bridle-hand, and the clapping and cheriſhing of the by-ſtander, and ſo ſuffering him to ſtand and recouer breath a good ſpace after.

Of aduancing before.

When your horſe can ſtop and retire well, which may be done in the ſame ſpace that you teach him his large ring-turnes, for it is as it were three leſſons learnt in one, you ſhall then teach him to aduance before when he ſtoppeth, which is very comely and gracefull to the beholders; and you ſhall doe it in this manner: after you haue ſtopped your horſe, without giuing your hand any eaſe, you ſhall lay the calues of both your legges hard to his ſides, and adde thereto the noiſe of the ſhaking of your rod, and your voice, by crying *vp, vp*, which will at

firſt (peraduenture) but a little amaze him, becauſe hee vnderſtandeth not your meaning: therefore you ſhall put him forward againe, and doe as before, and that with a little more ſtrength, continuing the practice of the ſame till you perceiue he taketh one foote from the earth, then cheriſh him a little, and ſo to the leſſon again, till he take vp both his legges from the ground, which when he doth orderly or diſorderly, yet cheriſh him exceedingly, that he may come to the knowledge of your meaning, without which all your labour is loſt; then to your former practice againe, till you haue brought him to that perfectneſſe, that he will with all readineſſe aduance as oft as you will giue him the calues of your legs to his ſides, be it leſſe or more times together; this done, you ſhall looke to the orderly and comelineſſe of his aduancing: as firſt, that he take vp his legs both euen together, and winde them inward towards his body; then that hee aduance not too high, (for feare of comming ouer vpon you) but couch his hinder loines cloſe to the ground; then that hee ſprauleth not, nor paweth with his feet forward; and laſtly, that he aduance not for his owne pleaſure, but when you command him by your owne direct and orderly motions, for the contrary is a foule fault in horſemanſhip.

For helps in this leſſon, they are the calues of your legges, the ſhaking of your rod ouer his head, and your voice, as is before ſaid, and the deſcent of ſome hanging ground, which will make his hinder loines couch the better. Helps.

The corrections are according to the natures of offences, as the euen ſtroke of your ſpurres, or a good laſh with your rod, when you ſee hee fixeth his feete to the ground, and ſtubbornely applies himſelfe to diſobey you, Corrections.

you, or will take vp his feete one after another, and not both together. If hee doe aduance too high, ſo as he is ready to come ouer vpon you, or if he ſpraule or pawe forth with his feete, you ſhall then not onely giue him both your ſpurres hard together, but alſo a good ierke or two with your rod betweene his eares: but if he aduance when you would not haue him, you ſhall then in the ſame inſtant ierke him ouer both the knees with your rod; and if he aduance againe, ierke him againe, not ceaſing till he fixe his feete to the ground, or goe backward, and then cheriſh him.

Cheriſhings

For particular cheriſhings in this leſſon, they are no other then thoſe formerly ſpoke of, onely they muſt be done with a more ready watchfulneſſe, in the very inſtant and moment of time in which he performeth any thing well, that the horſe may vnderſtand why and wherefore he receiueth ſuch contentment, and thereby be incouraged to perſeuere in his goodneſſe, and bee more ready to apprehend his riders pleaſure.

The vſe of aduancing.

For the vſe of aduancing, it is two-fold; as namely, to giue a grace to his other leſſons, and to bring his bodie to nimbleneſſe: yet for the moſt part it is onely vſed at the ſtop, where when you haue finiſht any leſſon, if then concluding with the ſtop you make him aduance, once, twice, or thrice, it will be both a grace to the beaſt, and ſhew much Art in the horſe-man; alſo it maketh a horſe apt and ready to turne well, and maketh him truſt to his hinder legges, whereby his fore-parts may be directed and gouerned at the horſe-mans pleaſure.

Of yerking behinde.

Next to aduancing, you ſhall teach your horſe to yarke behinde, in this manner: when at any time you haue made him ſtop, you ſhall preſently with your rod giue him a good ierke vnder the belly neere to his flank,

which

which though at the firſt hee apprehend not, yet by a continuall and conſtant vſe thereof, you ſhall in the end bring him to yerke out his hinder legs; at the firſt doing whereof you ſhall cheriſh him, for that is the onely language by which he knowes he doth your will, and then hauing pauſed a little, make him doe it againe, increaſing it euery day, and doubling his doings till he be ſo ready, that when you pleaſe to giue the ierke he will then giue the yerke, and then you ſhall looke to the comelineſſe of his doing, that is to ſay, that he yerke not out his hinder legs, till his fore-legs be aboue the ground, then that he yerke not one legge farther out then the other, but both euen together, then that hee yerke not too high, and laſtly, that he yerke not one legge out whileſt the other is on the ground, all which are errors of great groſneſſe. Therefore to make the horſe more perfect in this leſſon, it ſhall be good to teach him to yerke out behinde when he ſtandeth in the ſtable, by ierking him vpon the buttockes with your rod, and not ceaſing to moleſt him till hee raiſe his rumpe aboue the ground, and then to cheriſh him, and ſo to apply him without any eaſe and reſt till he doe your will; then when he is perfect, to put the ſame in practice when you are in the field on his backe, by turning your rod in your hand to his buttocke-ward, and touching him therewith to make him yerke as aforeſaid.

For the helps, they are the conſtant ſtaying his mouth on the bridle, the ſtroake of your rod vnder his belly, or the gentle touching him vpon the rumpe with the ſame. Helps.

The corrections are onely the euen ſtroke of your ſpurs, when either he refuſeth to yerke, or yerketh out diſorderly and out of malice; or the ſingle ſpurre on that Corrections.

ſide on which he yerketh out moſt diſorderly: and laſtly, a reſtleſſe holding of him to the leſſon, not giuing him any reſt or eaſe till he doe it in that good manner which you can wiſh.

Cheriſhings. Then for his cheriſhings they are all thoſe formerly mentioned, being beſtowed vpon him in the very inſtant of his well-doing.

Of turning. When your horſe is perfect in all the leſſons formerly ſpoke of, and vnderſtandeth the helps and corrections belonging to the ſame, you ſhal then teach him to turne readily on both hands, by ſtraitning his large rings, and bringing them into a much leſſe compaſſe: and although amongſt horſe-men, and in the Art of horſemanſhip, there are diuers and ſundry turnes, ſome high and loftie, as the turne vpon the *curuet*, *caproile*, or on bounds, ſome cloſe and neere the ground, as the turne *Terra*, *Terra*, or thoſe we call, *Caragolo*, *Serpeigiare*, and ſuch like, and ſome ſwift and flying, as the *niauellare*, *chambetta*, and ſuch like; yet ſith they all labour but to one end, which is to bring an horſe to an exact ſwiftneſſe and readineſſe in turning, I will in as briefe and plaine manner as I can ſhew you how to compaſſe the ſame. Firſt therefore you ſhall make out a ring ſome three or foure yards in compaſſe, and in the ſame withall gentleneſſe a while walke your horſe, ſuffering him to goe in the ſame at his owne pleaſure, gathering his head vp by little and little, and making him take pleaſure in the ſame, till you find that he taketh knowledge of the ring, and will with all willingneſſe walke about the ſame, coueting rather to ſtraiten it, then inlarge it, which perceiued, you ſhal then carry your bridle-hand conſtant & ſomewhat ſtrait, yet the outmoſt reyne euer ſomewhat more ſtrait then the inmoſt, making the horſe rather looke from the ring then

into

into the ring, & the calue of your legge (as occasion shall serue) somewhat neere to the outward side of the horse, & then you shall trot him about the ring, first on the one side, and then on the other, making your changes within that strait ring as you did before within the large ring.

And in this sort without ceasing you shall exercise your horse a full houre together, then stop him, make him aduance twice or thrice together, then retire in an euen line, and so stand still a pretty while, and cherish him; then when hee hath taken fresh breath, to him againe, and doe as before, continually labouring by raising vp your bridle-hand, and thrusting forward your legs and body to bring his trot to all the swiftnesse and loftines that may be, and in your changes to do them so readily and roundly as may be also, making him to lap his outmost leg so much ouer his inmost leg, that he may couer it more then a foot ouer, and thus you shall exercise him a whole forenoone, at least a weeke together, only doing his former lessons but once ouer in a morning, & no more, and in this practice you teach him perfectly three lessons together, that is, the turne *Terra, Terra*, the *Incaualare*, and the *Chambetta*, the turne *Terra, Terra*, in the outmost circle of the strait ring, and the *incaualare* and *chambetta* in the changes, wherein hee is forst to lap one legge ouer another, or else to lift vp the inmost legge from the ground whilest he brings the outmost ouer it: and surely in this ring and these changes consisteth all the maine Art of turning, and the chiefest glory both of the horse and horse-man: and therefore it is meete for euery Rider to thinke this lesson neuer perfectly learnt, and therefore continually to practice his horse in the same, making him not onely tread and trot these narrow rings, but also gallop them, and from galloping them,

to passe them about in ground salts, as by taking vp his fore-legs from the ground both together, and bringing his hinder feete into their place, and so passing the ring about once, twice, or thrice, at your pleasure, or as oft as the horses strength and courage wil allow: and this is the true turne called *Terra, Terra*, and of greatest request with horse-men, and likewise with souldiers; and this will euery horse naturally and easily be brought vnto, onely by a continuall trotting and gallopping of these narrow rings. Thus you see the perfectnesse of your large rings brings your horse to an easie vse of the strait rings, and the easie knowledge of the strait rings brings a horse to the perfection of turning, which is the ground and maine summe of this Art, as stopping begets retiring, and retiring aduancing. Thus euery lesson as it were a chaine is linkt one into another.

Helps. The helps belonging to turning, are all whatsoeuer are formerly spoken of, because it is a lesson which besides that it containeth in it selfe all other lessons, so it must be done with more courage, Art, and nimblenesse, then any else whatsoeuer, and therefore the horse had need of all the assistance that can possibly be giuen him.

Corrections. The corrections are the spurres giuen out of the outmost side, when the horse sticks, and is harder to come about on the one side, then on the other; and the rod stricken hard on the outmost side of the offending member, as also a continuall labour when the horse shewes either vnwillingnesse or disobedience, touching the vnnimblenesse of his turning when hee beats one legge against another, or treads one foot vpon another, the raps and hurts he doth himselfe are sufficient corrections, and will both make him know his fault & amend it.

Cherishings For his cherishings, they are also the former already spoke

ſpoke of, yet to be vſed (if poſſible) with greater earneſtneſſe, in as much as this leſſon being moſt cunning, would for the performance thereof euer receiue the moſt comfort.

Your horſe being brought to this perfection, that hee will perfectly tread his large rings, ſtop, retire, aduance before, yerke behinde, and turne readily on either hand, you ſhall then take away his muſrole and trench, and in ſtead thereof put vpon his head a gentle Cauezan of two ioints and three peeces, with a chap-band vnderneath, which you ſhall buckle cloſe, but not ſtrait, and be ſure that the cauezan lie vpon the tender griſſel of the horſes noſe, ſomewhat neere to the vpper part of his noſtrils, then to the chap-band you ſhall faſten the murtingale, and laſtly to the rings on each ſide the cauezan, you ſhal faſten long diuided reynes, more then a yard and a halfe in length a peece, then into his mouth you ſhall put a ſweet ſmooth cannon bit, with a plaine watring chaine, the cheeke being of large ſize, ſo as it may arme a little aboue the point of his ſhoulder; and the kirble ſhall be thicke, round and large, hanging looſely vpon his nether lip, and intiſing the horſe with his lip to play with the ſame. Thus armed you ſhall take his backe, and caſting the left reyne of your cauezan ouer the horſes right ſhoulder, you ſhall beare it vnder your thumbe, with the reynes of the bit in your left hand, and the right reynes of the cauezan you ſhall caſt ouer the horſes left ſhoulder, and beare it with your rod in your right hand, and ſo trot him forth the firſt morning outright two or three miles in the high way, making him onely feele and grow acquainted with the bit, and onely making him now and then ſtop and retire, and gathering vp his head into a due place, and faſhioning his reyne with all the beautie

and

and comelineſſe that may be, which done, the next day you ſhall bring him to his large rings, and as was before ſhewed, there make him perfect with the bit, as you did with the ſnaffle, firſt in trotting, then in gallopping of the ſame; then make him ſtop, retire, aduance, yerke behinde, and turne vpon either hand, with a great deale more perfectneſſe, and more grace then was formerly done with the trench, which is an eaſie labour, in as much as the bit is of much better command, and brings more comelineſſe to the horſes motions, is alſo a greater helpe, a ſharper correction, and a cheriſher of more comfort then any before vſed. And thus in the firſt moneth you may make any horſe perfect vpon the trene in the leſſons before ſpoke of, ſo in the ſecond moneth you may make the ſame leſſons a great deale more perfect vpon the bit, and ſo preſume in two moneths to haue a perfect ground horſe, fit either for Souldier or Scholar, that hath any good rules of horſemanſhip in him.

Of the turning poſt.

Now foraſmuch as the Art of turning in horſes is of great difficultie, and ought of all leſſons to be moſt ellaborate, I will ſpeake a little further thereof, and ſhew you the practice of theſe preſent times for the beſt accompliſhment of the ſame, without ſtirring vp euill motions in the horſe, whence reſtiueneſſe and other vilde errours doe grow; for it is certaine that euery horſe naturally deſireth neither offence nor to offend; but the raſh indiſcretion of ignorant horſemen, which will compell a horſe to doe before he know what or how to doe, is the begetting of thoſe euils which are hardly or neuer reclaimed: for a horſe is like an ill brought vp boy, who hauing learnt drunkenneſſe in his youth, will hardly be ſober in his age, and hauing once got a knauiſh qualitie, though hee be neuer ſo much corrected for the ſame,

will

will yet now and then ſhew that the remembrance is not vtterly extinguiſhed; and foraſmuch as in this leſſon of ſtrait turnes, there is ſo much curious hardneſſe, that a horſe is moſt ſubiect to rebell, and learne many euils thereby, therefore to preuent all thoſe euils, you ſhall cauſe a ſmooth ſtrong poſt to be well ramm'd and fixed in the earth in the midſt of the ſtrait ring, at the very point and center thereof; then cauſing a foot-man to ſtand at the poſt, you ſhal giue him the right reyne of your cauezan, which you ſhall make him hold about the poſt, and ſo walke or trot your horſe about the ſame on your right hand as long as you pleaſe; then taking vp the right reyne, giue him the left reyne, and do as much vpon the left hand: and thus change from hand to hand as oft as you ſhall thinke conuenient, till you haue brought your horſe to the abſolute perfection of euery turne, the poſt being ſuch a guide and bond vnto the horſe, that albeit the horſeman were of himſelfe vtterly ignorant, yet it is impoſſible the horſe ſhould either diſorder or diſobey his riders purpoſe.

Of managing.

When your horſe can thus perfectly ſet euery ſeuerall turne, either ſtrait or open with his bit, you ſhall then teach him to manage, which is the only poſture for the vſe of the ſword on horſe-backe; and you ſhall doe it in this manner: Firſt, cauſe ſome by-ſtander to pricke vp in the earth two riding rods, about twenty yards, or leſſe, as you thinke good, diſtant one from the other; then walke your horſe in a ſtrait turne or ring about, the firſt on your right hand, and ſo paſſing him in an euen furrow downe to the other rod, walke about it alſo in a narrow ring on your left hand, then thruſt him into a gentle gallop downe the euen furrow, till you come to the firſt rod, and there making him as it were ſtop

and aduance without any pauſe or intermiſſion of time, thruſt him forward againe, and beat the turne *Terra, Terra*, about it on your right hand, then gallop forth-right to the other rod, and in the ſame manner beat the turne about on your left hand: and thus doe as oft as you ſhall thinke it conuenient for your owne practice, and the horſes ſtrength.

Diuerſities of manages.

Now of theſe manages our ancient maſters in horſemanſhip haue made diuers kindes, as manage with reſt, and manage without reſt; manage with ſingle turnes, and manage with double turnes, which in deede doth rather breed confuſion, then vnderſtanding in either the horſe or horſeman: therefore for your better knowledge I will reduce them only but to two kindes; it is manage open, and manage cloſe: your open manage is that which I ſhewed you before, when you turne *Terra, Terra*, which is the moſt open of all ſtrait turnes; and your cloſe manage is when you turne vpon the *incauolare*, or *chambetta*, which are the cloſeſt of all turnes, and may be done as before I ſhewed, in a flying manner, euen vpon one foot, which although it be artfull, yet it is not ſo glorious and ſafe for the Souldiers practice, onely this you may be moſt aſſured of, that when a horſe can manage vpon both theſe turnes, he may manage without more inſtruction, vpon any other turne whatſoeuer.

Of the cariere.

When your horſe is perfect in the manages beforeſaid, you may then paſſe a carriere at your pleaſure, which is to run your horſe forth-right at his full ſpeed, and then making him ſtop quickly, ſodainly, firme and cloſe on his buttocke: in which leſſon there needeth little inſtruction, but onely ſome few obſeruations, as firſt that you make not your carriere too long, whereby the horſe may be weakened, nor too ſhort, whereby his true winde

winde and courage may be vndiſcouered, but competent and indifferent, as about foure or fiue ſcore yards at the moſt; then that you ſtart him gently without affright; and laſtly, that you firſt giue him a little warning with your bridle-hand, and then ſtop him firmly & ſtrongly; which place of ſtop if it be a little bending downward, it is a great deale the better. And thus in theſe leſſons already ſhewed you, conſiſteth all the full perfection of a horſe for ſeruice in the warres, which any painfull man may bring his horſe well vnto in leſſe then three moneths, how euer our ancients in former times haue beene blinded, and in the ſame practice haue waſted two yeers ere they brought it to perfection.

Horſes for pleaſure.

Now foraſmuch as to the Art of riding belongeth diuers other ſalts and leapes, right pleaſant and curious to behold, and though not generally vſed in the warres, yet not vtterly vſeleſſe for the ſame, and ſith they are many times very needfull for the health of mans body, I will by no meanes abridge our Engliſh huſbandman of the ſame, but proceed to the leſſons which are meet for horſes of pleaſure, of which the firſt is to make a horſe bound aloft with all his foure feet from the ground; and you ſhall doe it in this manner: when you haue trotted your horſe forth-right a dozen or twenty yards, you ſhall ſtop him, and when hee hath aduanced once or twice, you ſhall a little ſtraiten your bridle-hand, and then giue him the euen ſtroke of both your ſpurs together hard, which at firſt will but onely quicken and amaze him, but doing it againe and againe, it will breed other thoughts in him, and hee being of ſpirit and mettall (as it is loſt labour to offer to teach a iade ſuch motions) he will preſently gather vp his body, and either riſe little or much from the ground, then preſently che-

Of bounding aloft.

riſh him, and after ſome reſt offer him the like againe, and thus doe till you haue made him bound twice or thrice: then make much of him, and doe no more for that day: the next day renue his leſſon againe, and double his exerciſe, increaſing ſo day by day till he come to that perfectneſſe, that hee will bound whenſoeuer your ſpurs ſhall command him.

Of the coruet. When your horſe can bound perfectly, then you ſhall teach him the coruet in this manner: you ſhal at the corner where two walles ioyne together, a little hollow the ground a horſes length or more, and then place a ſmooth ſtrong poſt by the ſide of the hollowneſſe a horſes length likewiſe from the wall; then ouer againſt the poſt faſten an iron ring in the wall: this done, ride your horſe into the hollow place, and faſten one of the reynes of the cauezan vnto the ring, and the other about the poſt; then after you haue cheriſht your horſe, make him aduance, by the helpe of the calues of your legges onely twice or thrice together; then let him ſtand ſtill, and cheriſh him; then make him to aduance againe at leaſt a dozen times together; then reſt, and after aduance twenty or forty times together, daily increaſing his aduancings as he growes perfect therein, till you perceiue that hee hath got ſuch a habit therein, that he will by no meanes preſſe forward, but keeping his ground certaine, aduance both before and behinde of an equall height, and keepe one iuſt and certaine time with the motion of your legges, neither doing ſlower nor faſter, but all after one manner and leiſure: but if you finde that he doth not raiſe his hinder parts high enough, then you ſhall cauſe a foot-man to ſtand by you, and as you make him aduance before, ſo the foot-man by ierking him gently vpon the hinder fillets

with

with his rod, to raiſe vp his hinder parts: alſo this will bring your horſe in few daies to a perfect and braue coruet, ſo that after you may doe it in any place where you pleaſe, without the helpe either of your wall or poſt, or other by-ſtander.

When your horſe is made perfect in the coruet, and that hee will doe it readily and comely, you ſhall at the end of euery third or fourth aduancing, giue him the ſtroake of your ſpurs, and make him bound aloft; then put him to his coruet againe as before, and then make him bound againe; and thus at the end of euery third aduancing ſee you make him bound for the length of a tilt barre, or an ordinary managing furrow, according to the horſes ſtrength: and this is called the gallop galliard, which if it be taught a horſe along by the ſide of ſome wall or ſmooth pale, it is ſo much the better, and a great deale fewer diſorders will ariſe and trouble the Rider. Of the gallop galliard.

The next leſſon you ſhall teach your horſe after the gallop galliard, is the *capriolle* or goats leape, which is the ſame manner of motion which the coruet is, onely it is to be done forward, & much ground gained in the ſalt, and the horſe is to raiſe his hinder parts as high, or rather higher then his fore parts, & to keep rather a ſwifter then ſlower time in doing of it: therfore when you teach your horſe to doe it, you ſhall bring him into ſome hollow furrow, where the ground is a little deſcending, and turning his head to the deſcent, put him into the coruet temperate and gently; then when you giue him the calues of your legs to raiſe vp his fore-parts, in the ſame inſtant ierke your legge violently forward again, that he may not ſticke, but carry his hinder legges after his fore-legges, and let ſome skilfull foot-man ſtanding by your Of the Capriolle.

side ierke the horse ouer the fillets with his rod, and make him raise vp his hinder parts: and thus doe without ceasing till he performe your will nimbly and cunningly, and then forget not to cherish him and giue him all comfort possible. And this lesson and the other which consist of violent and quicke salts or leapes, would euer be practiced the first in the morning whileſt a horse is fresh and lustie, for to put him to them after his fire edge is taken away, will but bring him to a loathing of his instruction, or at the best to doe them but slouenly, heauily, and vnwillingly.

Of going aside.

There is also another motion which is pleasing to the eye, though it be very labourſome to the body, which is to make a horse goe side-long of which hand soeuer the Rider is disposed, and is very necessary in the warres, because it is the auoiding of any blow comming from the enemy. This motion when you intend to teach your horse, you shall draw vp your bridle-hand somewhat strait, and if you determine to haue him goe aside to your right hand, lay your left reyne close to his necke, and the calue of your left legge close to his side, and as you did in the *incaualare*, make him lap or put his left legge ouer his right, then turning your rod backward, and ierking him gently on the left hinder thigh, make him bring his hinder parts to the right side also, and stand in an euen line as at the first; then make him remoue his fore-parts more then before, so that hee may stand as it were crosse ouer the euen line, and then make him bring his hinder parts after, and stand in an euen line againe; and thus doe till by long practice hee will moue his fore-parts and hinder parts both together, and goe sidelong as farre as you please; then cherish him: and if you will haue him goe towards your left hand,

doe

doe as you did before, vſing all your helps and corrections on the right ſide onely. And thus much I thinke is ſufficient to haue ſpoke touching all the ſeuerall leſſons meet to be taught to any horſe whatſoeuer, whether he be for ſeruice or for pleaſure, and which being performed artfully, carefully, and with patience, you may preſume your horſe is compleat and perfect, the rather ſith no man can finde out any inuention, or teach any other motions to a horſe, which may be good and comely, but you ſhall eaſily perceiue that they are receiued from ſome one of theſe already rehearſed.

Riding before a Prince.

Now if you ſhall be called to ride before a Prince, you muſt not obſerue the libertie of your owne will, but the ſtate of the perſon before whom you ride, and the grace of the horſe which you ride: and therefore being come into the riding place, you ſhall chuſe your ground, ſo that the perſon before whom you are to ride may ſtand in the midſt thereof, ſo as he may well behold both the paſſage of the horſe to him and from him: then being ſeated in comely order, and euery ornament about you handſome and decent, you ſhall put your horſe gently forth into a comely trot, and being come againſt the perſon of eſtate, bowe your body downe to the Reſt of your horſe, then railing your ſelfe againe, paſſe halfe a ſcore yards beyond him, and there marking out a narrow ring, thruſt your horſe into a gentle gallop, and giue him two or three managing turns in as ſhort ground as may be, to ſhew his nimblenes and readines; then vpon the laſt turne, his face being towards the great perſon, ſtop him comely and cloſe, and make him to aduance twice or thrice; then hauing taken breath, put him into a gallop galliard, and ſo paſſe along the length of the euen furrow with that ſalt, making him do it alſo round about

the

the ring; then his face being towards the Prince, ſtop him, and giue him freſh breath, then thruſt him into the caproile, now and then making him yerke out behinde, yet ſo as it may be perceiued it is your will, and not the horſes malice: and hauing gone about the ring with that ſalt, and his face brought to looke vpon the Prince, ſtop him againe and giue him breath; then drawing neerer to the Prince, you ſhall beat the turne *Terra, Terra*, firſt in a pretty large compaſſe, then by ſmall degrees ſtraitning it a little and a little, draw it to the very center where you may giue two or three cloſe flying turnes, and then changing your hands, vndoe all that you did before, till you come to the rings firſt largeneſſe; then the horſes face being direct vpon the Prince, ſtop him, and put him into a coruet, and in that motion hold him a pretty ſpace, making him doe it firſt in an euen line, firſt to the right hand, then to the left, now backward, then forward againe: and thus hauing performed euery motion orderly and comely, bowe downe your body to the Prince, and ſo depart.

Of the Caragolo.

But if you intend to ride onely for recreation, then you ſhall marke what leſſon your horſe is moſt imperfect in, and with that leſſon you ſhall euer when you ride both begin and end; after it you ſhall fall to thoſe leſſons which are to your ſelfe moſt difficult, and by the practice of them bring your ſelfe to a perfectneſſe, then conſequently to all other leſſons, repeating (as it were) euery one ouer more or leſſe, leaſt want of vſe breed forgetfulneſſe, and forgetfulneſſe vtter ignorance: but if your recreation in riding be tied to any ſpeciall rules of health, and that your practice therein proceede more from the commandement of your Phyſitian then your pleaſure, then I would wiſh you in the morning firſt to

To ride for recreation.

begin

begin with a stirring or rough lesson, as the gallop galliard, bounding, or such like, which hauing a little stirred your bloud, and made it warme, you shall then calme it againe with a gentle manage, or the gallopping of large rings; then to stirre your spirits againe, to bring the stone downe, or procure appetite, passe into the capriole or coruet; and then to make quiet those moued parts, set the turne called *Terra, Terra*, the *incaualaire*, and such like.

And thus one while stirring your bloud, and another while moderately allaying such stirring, you shall giue your body that due and proper exercise which is most fit for health and long life. Many other wayes this recreation may be vsed for the good of a mans body, which because particular infirmities must giue particular rules how and when to vse it, I wil at this time speake no further thereof, but referre the exercise to their own pleasures which shall practice the same, and to the good they shall finde in the practice.

Chap. III.

Of the breeding of all sorts of Horses fit for the Husbandmans vse.

THe mindes of men being swaied with many various motions, take delight sometimes to be recreated rather with contemplatiue delights then with actiue pleasures; and there is strong reason therefore, because disabilitie of body, or affaires of the kingdome or common-wealth, may take a man from those preoccupations, which otherwise might stirre him to more laborious exercise: and of these contemplatiue recreations, I can preferre none before that gentlemanly and beneficiall delight of breeding creatures meete for the vse of man,

and the good of the common-wealth wherein he liueth, and of theſe breedings I cannot eſteeme any ſo excellent as the breeding of horſes, both for the pleaſure we gaine thereby in our owne particular ſeruice, and alſo for the ſtrength, defence, and tillage of the kingdome.

The breeding of horſes.

He therefore that ſuteth his recreation to the breeding of horſes, muſt firſt haue reſpect vnto the ground whereon he liueth or enioyeth; for euery ground is not meete to breede on, but ſome too good, ſome too bad; ſome too good, becauſe they may be exhauſted to a more beneficiall commoditie, horſes hauing a world of caſualties attending on them, and many yeeres before the true profit doth ariſe; and ſome too bad, becauſe the extreme barrenneſſe of the ſame will denie competent nouriſhment to the thing bred, and ſo to the loſſe of time and profit adde mortalitie.

Grounds to breede on.

The grounds then meete to breede horſes on, would neither be extreame fruitful, nor extreame barraine, but of an indifferent mixture, yeelding rather a ſhort ſweet burthen, then a long, rich and fruitfull; it would rather lie high then low, but howſoeuer firme and hard vnder the foote; it would be full of Mole-hils, vneuen treadings, hils, and much craggineſſe, to bring colts to nimbleneſſe of foote; it would haue good ſtore of freſh waters, an open ſharpe aire, and ſome conuenient couert; and this ground is beſt if it be ſeuerall and incloſed, yet may be bred vpon though it be open and in common, onely ſome more carefulneſſe to be looked for, a little before, and in the time of foaling. Nay, the grounds which are neither ſeuerall nor common, are very good alſo to breed on, and thoſe be your teathering grounds, which we call particular grounds; for though they be proper commonly to one man, yet they are not diuided

nor

nor eaten otherwiſe then at the owners pleaſure: and theſe teathering grounds are as good as any grounds for the firſt nouriſhing of a foale, if they be amongſt corne grounds, or any graine except peaſe onely.

If you haue much ground to breede on, you ſhall diuide it into many paſtures, the leaſt and barrenneſt for your Stallion to run with your Mares in, thoſe which haue leaſt danger of waters in for your Mares to foale in, the fruitfulleſt and of beſt growth for your Mares to giue milke in, and the moſt ſpatious and vneuenneſt to bring vp your colts in after they are weaned. Diuiſion of grounds.

For the choice of a good Stallion, and which is beſt for our kingdome, opinion ſwayeth ſo farre, that a man can hardly giue well-receiued directions: yet ſurely if men will be ruled by the truth of experience, the beſt Stallion to beget horſes for the warres is the *Courſer*, the *Iennet* or the *Turke*; the beſt for courſing and running is the *Barbarie*; the beſt for hunting is the *Baſtard courſer* begot of the *Engliſh*; the beſt for the Coach is the *Flemmiſh*; the beſt for trauell or burthen is the *Engliſh*, and the beſt for eaſe is the *Iriſh hobbie*. Choice of Stallion, & which beſt.

For the choice of Mares you ſhall greatly reſpect their ſhapes and mettals, eſpecially that they be beautifully fore-handed, for they giue much goodnes to their foales: and for their kindes, any of the *Races* before ſpoken is very good, or any of them mixt with our true Engliſh *Races*, as *Baſtard-courſer Mare*, *Baſtard-Iennet*, *Baſtard-Turke*, *Barbary*, &c. Choice of Mares.

The beſt time to put your Stallion & Mares together is in the beginning of March, if you haue any graſſe, as you ſhould haue great care for that purpoſe, and one foale falling in March is worth two falling in May, becauſe he poſſeſſeth, as it were, two winters in a yeere, and When to put them together.

is thereby ſo hardned, that nothing can (almoſt) after impaire him; and the beſt time to take your horſe from the Mares againe is at the end of Aprill, in which you ſhall note, that from the beginning of March till the beginning of May, you may at any time put your Stallions to your Mares, and a moneths continuance is euer ſufficient; prouided euer, as neere as you can, that you put them together in the increaſe of the Moone; for Foales got in the wane are not accounted ſtrong or healthfull.

Of couering Mares.

For couering of Mares, it is to be done two wayes, out of hand, or in hand; out of hand, as when the horſe and Mares run together abroad, as is before ſaid, or turned looſe into ſome empty barne for three nights one after another, which is the ſureſt and the ſafeſt way for a Mares holding; or in hand, early in a morning and late at an euening two or three dayes together, when you bring the horſe to the Mare, and make him couer her once or twice at a time, holding him faſt in your hand; and when the act is done, leade him backe to the ſtable; and in this act you ſhall euer obſerue, as ſoone as the horſe commeth from her backe, preſently to caſt a paile of cold water on her hinder parts, or elſe to chaſe her ſwiftly vp and downe, for feare by ſtanding ſtill ſhe caſt out the ſeed, which is very ordinary.

To know if a Mare hold.

To know whether your Mare hold to the horſe or no there be diuers wayes, of which the beſt is by offering her the horſe againe at the next increaſe of the Moone, which if ſhee willingly receiue, it is a ſigne ſhee held not before; but if ſhe refuſe, then it is moſt certaine ſhee is ſped; or if you poure a ſpoonfull of cold vineger into her eare, if ſhee ſhake onely her head, it is a ſigne ſhee holds, but if ſhe ſhake head, body and all, then truly it is a ſigne that ſhe doth not hold: laſtly, if after ſhee is co-

uered

uered you see her scoure, her coat grow smooth and shining, and that she doth (as it were) renue and increase in liking, then it is a signe she holds; but if she hold at a stay without any amendment, then offer the horse againe, for she is not serued.

To make your Mares conceiue most male-foales, you shall be sure to keepe your Stallion proud, and your Mare poore, that his lust mastering hers, he may onely be predominant and chiefe in the action: many other rules fancie deuiseth, but they erre in their ends, and I would by no meanes haue this discourse capable of any vncertaintie. To conceaue male-foales.

If you haue any aduantage giuen you by friendship, or otherwise, whereby you may haue a Mare at the present very well couered, onely yours is not yet ready for the horse, you shall in this case to prouoke lust in her, giue her to drinke good store of clarified hony and new milke mixt together, and then with a bush of nettles all to nettle her priuy parts, and then immediately offer her the horse. To prouoke lust.

To keepe your Mares from barrennesse, and to make them euer apt to conceiue Foales, you shal by no means feede them too extreme fat, but keepe them in a middle state of body, by moderate labour, for the leaner they are when they come to take the horse, the much better they will conceiue. To keepe mares from barrennesse.

After your Mares haue beene couered, and that you perceiue in them the markes of conceauing, you shall let them rest three weekes or a moneth, that the substance may knit; then after moderately labour or trauell them, till you see them spring, and then turne them abroad, and let them run till they foale; for to house them after is dangerous and vnwholesome. Ordering mares after couering.

A helpe for Mares in foaling.

If your Mare be hard of foaling, or will not cleanse after she hath foaled, you shall take a pint of running water, wherein good store of Fennell hath beene boiled, and as much strong, old, sweet wine, with a fourth part of the best sallet oile, and hauing mixt them well together, being but luke-warme, poure it into her nostrils, and then hold and stop them close, that she may straine her whole body, and it will presently giue her ease.

Ordering Mares after foaling.

As soone as your Mare hath foald, you shall remoue her into the best grasse you haue, which is fresh and vnsoiled, to make her milke spring; and if it be early in the yeere, you shall haue care that there be good shelter in the same, and there let her nourish her foale most part of the Summer following.

Weaning of foales.

As touching the weaning of foales, though some vse to weane them at *Michaelmas*, or *Martilmas* following, out of a supposition that the winter milke is not good or wholesome, yet they are much deceiued; and if you can by any conuenient meanes (sauing greater losses) let your foales run with their Dammes the whole yeere, euen till they foale againe; for it will keepe the foale better in health, in more lust, and lesse subiect to tenderneſſe.

Ordering after the weaning.

When you intend to weane your foales, you shall take them from their Dammes ouer night, and driue them into some empty house where they may rest, and the Mares be free from their noses: then on the morning following giue to euery foale fasting a branch or two of Sauen annointed or rould in butter, and then hauing fasted two houres after, giue them a little meat, as grasse, hay, or garbadge of corne, with some cleare water, and doe thus three dayes together; then seeing that they haue forgotten their Dammes, geld such colt foales as

you

you intend to make Geldings of; and after their ſwellings are paſt, put them with your other colt-foales into a paſture prouided for them by themſelues, and your fillie foales into another by themſelues; which paſtures may either be high woods, commons, carrs, or ſuch like ſpacious peeces of ground, where they may run till they be ready for the ſaddle.

Gelding of Colts.

Now albeit I proportion vnto you this manner of gelding of foales, yet I would haue you know that the beſt and ſafeſt way to geld them, is if it may be vnder the Damme when they ſucke, as at nine or at fifteene dayes of age, if the ſtones appeare, or elſe ſo ſoone as you can by any meanes perceiue them fall downe into the cod, for then there will be no danger of ſwelling, or other miſchiefes which commonly attend the action. And thus much touching the breeding of horſes, and the obſeruations due to the ſame through all the courſes and paſſages thereof, as hath beene found by ancient practice and experience.

Chap. IIII.

Of Horſes for trauell, and how to make them amble.

THe Huſbandman, whoſe occupation is the generall affaires of the Common-wealth, as ſome to the Markets, ſome to the Citie, and ſome to the Seats of Iuſtice, muſt neceſſarily be imploied almoſt in continuall trauell: and therefore it is meet that he be prouided euer of a good and eaſie trauelling horſe.

The markes of a good trauelling horſe.

The markes whereby he ſhall chuſe a good trauelling horſe, are theſe: hee ſhall be of good colour and ſhape, leane headed, and round forcheaded, a full eye, open noſtrill, wide iawed, looſe thropled, deepe neckt, thin creſted, broad breaſt, flat chinde, out ribd, cleane limbd, ſhort

ſhort ioynted, ſtrong hooued, well mettald, neither fiery nor crauing, ſtrong in euery member, and eaſie to mount and get vp vpon; he ſhall follow without haling, and ſtand ſtill when he is reſtrained.

To make a horſe amble

Now foraſmuch as there are a world of good horſes, which are not eaſie, and a world of eaſie horſes which are not good, you ſhall by theſe directions following make any horſe amble whatſoeuer: firſt then you ſhall vnderſtand that practice hath made diuers men beleeue that diuers wayes they can make a horſe amble, as by gagging them in the mouthes, by toiling them in deepe earth, by the helpe of ſhooes, by gallopping and tiring, or ſuch like, all which are ill and imperfect: yet the truth is, there is but one certaine and true way to compaſſe it, and that is to make of ſtrong garth webbe, flat and well quilted with cotton, foure paſternes for the ſmals of his fore-legs, vnder his knees, and for the ſmals of his hinder legges ſomewhat below the ſpauen ioints: to theſe paſternes you ſhall fixe ſtrong ſtraps of leather, with good iron buckles, to make ſhorter or longer at pleaſure; and hauing plac't them about his foure legges, you ſhall take two ſeuerall round roapes, of an eaſie twiſt, made with ſtrong loopes at either end, and not aboue eight handfuls in length: and theſe the horſe ſtanding in a true proportion, you ſhall faſten to the foure ſtraps of leather, to wit, one of them to his neere fore-legge and his neere hinder legge, and the other to his farre fore-legge and his farre hinder legge, which is cald amongſt horſe-men trauelling: with theſe you ſhall let him walke in ſome incloſed peece of ground, till hee can ſo perfectly goe in the ſame, that when at any time you offer to chaſe him, you may ſee him amble truly and ſwiftly: then you ſhall take his backe, and ride him with the ſame trameſs, at

Diuers wayes of ambling.

Of trauelling.

leaſt

leaſt three or foure times a day, till you finde that he is ſo perfect, that no way can be ſo rough and vneuen, as to compell him to alter his ſtroke, or goe vnnimbly. This done, you may firſt take away one tramell, then after the other, and onely wreath about vnder his foure fet-locks thicke and heauie great rolds of hay or ſtraw-ropes, and ſo ride him with the ſame a good ſpace after, for it will make him amble eaſie; then cut them away, and ride and exerciſe him without any thing but the ordinary helpe of the bridles, and there is no doubt but hee will keepe his pace to your full contentment and pleaſure. Of wiſping.

Now during this time of your teaching, if your horſe ſtrike not a large ſtroke & ouer-reach enough, then you ſhall make the tramell the ſtraiter; but if he ouer-reach too much, then you ſhal giue it more libertie: and herein you ſhall finde that an inch ſtraitning, or an inch inlarging, will adde or abate at leaſt halfe a foot in his ful and direct ſtroke. And thus much touching the teaching of any horſe to amble, of what nature or qualitie ſoeuer he be, or how vnapt or vntoward ſoeuer to learne. Helps in ambling.

Chap. V.

Of the ordering and dieting of the hunting Horſe.

SOme loue hunting for the exerciſe of their owne bodies, ſome for the chaſe they hunt, ſome for the running of the hounds, and ſome for the training of their horſes, whereby they may finde the excellencie of their goodneſſe and indurance: to him therefore which placeth his delight in the goodneſſe of his horſe, I would wiſh him thus to order and diet him, and he ſhall moſt aſſuredly come to the true knowledge of the beſt worth which is within him; and if in theſe rules which I now ſhew, I be leſſe curious then formerly I haue

beene, let no man wonder thereat, but know that Time (which is the mother of experience) doth in our labours ſhew vs more new and more neerer wayes to our ends, then at the firſt we conceiued : and though when I firſt practiced this Art, I knew not how to bring a very fat horſe from *Michaelmas* till *Chriſtmas* to ſhew his vtmoſt perfection, I know now in one firſt moneth (though neuer ſo foule) how to make him fit for any wager, daring now boldly to aduenture on that, with which before I thought almoſt preſent death to offer : thus doth obſeruation and labour finde out the darkeſt ſecrets in Art.

Taking vp of the hunting horſe.

To beginne then with the firſt ordering of a hunting horſe, you ſhal know that the beſt time to take him from graſſe is about *Bartholmew-tide*, the day being faire, drie and pleaſant ; and as ſoone as he is taken vp, to let him ſtand all that night in any vaſt houſe to empty his bodie ; the next day ſtable him, and giue him wheat ſtraw if you pleaſe, but no longer in any wiſe ; for though the old rule is to take vp horſes bellies with ſtraw, yet it ſtraitneth the guts, heats the liuer, and hurteth the winde : therefore let onely moderate exerciſe, as riding him forth to water morning and euening, and other airings, doe what you expect ſtraw ſhould ; and for his food, let it be hay that is ſweet, though rough, and either old, or at leaſt well ſweat in the mowe.

Cloathing the horſe.

After his belly is emptied, you ſhall cloath him firſt with a ſingle cloath, whileſt the heat endureth, and after with more, as you ſhall ſee occaſion require ; and when you begin to cloath the horſe, then you ſhall dreſſe, curry, and rub him alſo. Now foraſmuch as it is a rule with ignorant horſe-men, that if they haue but the name of keeping a hunting-horſe, they will with all care (without any reaſon) lay many cloathes vpon him, as if it were

were a ſpeciall phyſicke; you ſhall know they are much deceiued therein, and may ſooner doe hurt then good with multiplicitie of cloathes: therefore to cloath a horſe right, cloath him according to the weather, and the temper of his body; as thus, if you ſee your horſe be ſlight, ſmooth and well coloured, then cloath him temperately, as with a ſingle cloth, of canuaſe or ſacke-cloth at the moſt; and if then as the yeere growes colder, you finde his haire riſe or ſtare about his necke, flanks, or outward parts, then you ſhall adde to a woollen cloth, or more if neede require, till his haire fall ſmooth againe, holding it for your rule, that a rough coat ſhews want of cloaths, and a ſmooth coat, cloathing enough: yet if your horſe haue beene cleane fed, taken exerciſe ſufficient, and hath not much glut within him, if then you finde that in the night he ſweateth in his cloathes, then it is a ſigne hee is ouer-fed; but if hee be foule inwardly, or hath not ſweat formerly, and now ſweats comming to good feeding, then you ſhall augment rather then diminiſh any cloathing; for his foulneſſe but then breaketh out, and being euacuated, he wil come to drineſſe of body againe, and ſo continue all the yeere after: and ſurely for an ordinary proportion of cloathes, I hold a canuaſe cloth and a cloth of Houſe-wiues woollen to be at full ſufficient for a hunting-horſe.

Of dreſſing the hunting horſe.

A hunting-horſe would be dreſt in his dayes of reſt twice a day, that is, before he goe to his morning watering, and before he goe to his euening watering: for the manner of his dreſſing, after he is vncloathed, you ſhall firſt curry him from the tips of the eare to the ſetling on of his taile, all his whole body moſt entirely ouer with an iron combe, his legges vnder the knees and cambrels onely excepted; then you ſhall duſt him, then

curry him againe all ouer with a round bruſh of briſtles, then duſt him the ſecond time, then rubbe all the looſe haires away with your hands wet in cleane water, and ſo rubbe till the horſe be as drie as at the firſt, then rubbe all his body and limbes ouer with an haire-cloth: laſtly, rubbe him ouer with a fine white linnen rubber, then picke his eyes, noſtrils, ſheath, cods, tuell, and feet very cleane, and ſo cloath him, and ſtop him round with wiſpes, if you water within the houſe, otherwiſe ſaddle him after his body is wrapt about in a woollen cloth, and ſo ride him forth to the water.

Of watring the hunting horſe.

The beſt water for a hunting horſe, is either a running riuer, or a cleere ſpring, remote from the ſtable a mile, or a mile and a halfe at moſt, and neere vnto ſome plaine peece of ground, where you may ſcope and gallop after he hath drunke; and as ſoone as you bring your horſe to the water, let him take his full draught without trouble or interruption; then gallop and ſcope him vp and downe a little, and ſo bring him to the water againe, and let him drinke what he pleaſe; and then gallop him againe: and thus do till you finde he will drinke no more; then hauing ſcop't him a little, walke him with all gentleneſſe home, and there cloath him vp, ſtop him round with great ſoft wiſpes, and ſo let him ſtand an houre vpon his bridle, and then feede him.

Of feeding the hunting horſe.

To ſpeake firſt of the foode for hunting horſes, the moſt ordinary is good ſweet ſound oats, either throughly dried with age, or elſe on the kiine; and if your horſe be either low of fleſh, or not of perfect ſtomack, if to two parts of thoſe oats you adde a third part of cleane olde beanes, it ſhall be very good and wholeſome; and if your horſe be in diet for a match, and haue loſt his ſtomack, if then you cauſe thoſe beanes to be ſpelted vpon a milne,

and

and ſo mixt with oats it will recouer him. The next food, which is ſomewhat ſtronger and better, is bread thus made: Take two buſhels of good cleane beans, and one buſhell of wheat, and grinde them together; then through a fine raunge bolt out the quantitie of two pecks of pure meale, and bake it in two or three loaues by it ſelfe, and the reſt ſift through a meale ſiue, and knead it with water and good ſtore of barme, and ſo bake it in great loaues, and with the courſer bread feede your horſe in his reſt, and with the finer againſt the daies of ſore labour. Now for the houres of his feeding, it ſhall be in the morning after his comming from water, an houre after high noone, after his comming from his euening water, and at nine or ten of the clocke at night vpon the dayes of his reſt, but vpon the dayes of his exerciſe, two houres after he is throughly cold inwardly and outwardly, and then after according to the houres before mentioned. Laſtly, for the proportion of foode, you ſhall keepe no certaine quantitie, but according to the horſes ſtomacke, that is to ſay, you ſhall feed him by a little at once, ſo long as he eats with a good appetite, but when he begins to trifle or ſtumble with his meat, then to giue him no more. Now for his hay, you ſhall ſee that it be drie ſhort vplandiſh hay, and ſo it be ſweet, reſpect not how courſe or rough it is, ſith it is more to ſcoure his teeth and coole his ſtomacke, then for any nouriſhment expected from him.

Touching the horſes exerciſe, which is onely in the following of the hounds, you ſhall be ſure to traine him after thoſe which are moſt ſwift and ſpeedy, for ſo you ſhall know the truth, and not be deceiued in your opinion. Touching the dayes, it ſhall be twice a weeke at leaſt, but moſt commonly thrice. As for the quantitie of his exerciſe, The exerciſe of the horſe.

exercise, it must be according to his foulenesse or cleanesse; for if hee be very foule, you must then exercise moderately to breake his grease; if halfe foule, halfe cleane, then somewhat more to melt his grease; and if altogether cleane, then you may take what you please of him (prouided that you doe nothing to discourage his spirits, to abate his mettall, or to lame his limbes) and after euery dayes exercise be assured to giue him either the same night or the next day following, something by way of scouring or otherwise, to take away the grease formerly melted, by meanes whereof you shall be euer sure to keepe your horse in all good health & perfection.

The scouring of the horse.

The best and most excellentest way to scoure or purge your horse from all grease, glut or filthinesse within his body, which is a secret hitherto was neuer either sufficiently taught, or perfectly learned, is to take of Annise-seeds three ounces, of Cumming-seeds sixe drammes, of Carthamus a dramme and a halfe, of Fenegreeke-seede one ounce two drammes, of Brimstone one ounce and a halfe, beate all these to a fine powder, and searse them; then take of sallet oyle a pinte and two ounces, of hony a pound and a halfe, and of white wine foure pints; then with as much fine white meale as will suffice, make all into a strong stiffe paste, and kneade and worke it well: this paste keepe in a cleane cloth, for it will last long, and after your horse hath beene hunted, and is at night or in the morning exceeding thirstie, take a ball thereof as much as a mans fist, and wash and dissolue it in a gallon or two of cold water, and it will make the water looke white like milke; then offer it the horse to drinke in the darke, least the colour displease him; if he drinke it, then feede him; but if he refuse to drinke it, yet care not, but let him fast without drinke till he take it, which assuredly

he will doe in twice or thrice offering, and after once he hath taken it, be then aſſured hee will forſake any other drinke for it : of this drinke your horſe can neuer take too much, nor too oft, if he haue exerciſe ; otherwiſe it feeds too ſore. For all inward infirmities whatſoeuer it is a preſent remedy : therefore I would not wiſh any horſeman of vertue at any time to be without it; and being once made, it will laſt three or foure months at leaſt.

Ordering a horſe after exerciſe.

After your horſe hath beene exerciſed either with hunting, running traine-ſents, or otherwiſe, you ſhall euer coole him well in the field before you bring him home; but being come to the ſtable, you ſhall neither waſh nor walke, but inſtantly houſe him ; giue him ſtore of freſh litter, and rub him therewith, and with drie cloathes, till there be not a wet haire about him, then cloath him with his ordinary cloathes, and wiſpe him round ; then caſt another ſpare cloth ouer him, which you may bate at your pleaſure, and ſo let him ſtand till it be time to feede him. And thus you may keepe any hunting horſe either for match or otherwiſe, in as good ſtate and ſtrength as any horſe-man in this kingdome, though he exceede you farre both in reputation and experience.

Chap. VI.

Of the ordering and dieting of the running Horſe.

IF any Huſbandman haue his minde taken vp onely with the delight of running horſes, which is a noble ſport, and though not of ſo long indurance, yet equall with any before ſpoke of, hee ſhall for the bettering of his knowledge giue to his memory theſe few rules following, by which he ſhall rightly order and diet him.

Of his taking vp.

Firſt for his taking vp from graſſe (for there for order ſake wee muſt firſt begin) it ſhall be at the ſame time of the

the yeere, and after the ſame manner that you tooke vp your hunting horſe, and till you haue enſeamed him, hardned his fleſh, taken away his inward greaſe, and brought him to a good perfectneſſe of winde, you ſhall cloath him, dreſſe him, water him, feede him, exerciſe him, purge him and order him after labour, in all points and all things as you did your hunting horſe.

Of clothing him. When he is thus cleane of body and winde, you ſhall then lay on him ſome more cloathes then you did on your hunting horſe, to purge his body a little the more, and to make him the more apt to ſweat, and euacuate humours as they ſhall grow: the ordinary quantitie whereof would be a warme narrow woolen cloth about his body, on either ſide his hart; then a faire white ſheet, a woollen cloth aboue it, and a cannaſe cloth or two aboue it, and before his breaſt a woollen cloth at leaſt two double: he would continually ſtand vpon cleane litter, and haue his ſtable very darke and perfum'd with iuniper, when as the ſtrength of his dung ſhall annoy it.

Of dreſſing him. For his dreſſing, it ſhall be in all points done as you did to your hunting horſe, onely to dreſſe him once a day is ſufficient, and that euer in the after-noone: but for rubbing his limbes or body with drie cloathes or wiſpes, you ſhall doe that as oft as you come into the ſtable, prouided that you turne but his cloathes vp, but not take them from his body.

Of watering him. You ſhall water your running horſe as you watered your hunting horſe, and giue him the ſame exerciſe after it, onely you ſhall not bring him into the ſtable of at leaſt an houre or more after he is watred.

Of feeding him. The beſt foodes for your running horſe, is either good ſweet oates well dried, ſunned and beaten, or bread made of two parts wheat, and but one part beanes, and boulted

boulted and ſifted, and knodden, as was before ſhewed: onely if you adde to your better ſort of bread the whites of twenty or thirty egges, and with the barme a little ale alſo, it will be much the better; for you ſhall not reſpect how little water you vſe at all: the houres you feed in, and the quantitie of your food ſhall be the ſame, and in the ſame manner as was mentioned before for the hunting horſe, yet with theſe obſeruations, that if your horſe be very leane, ſickly, and a weake ſtomacke, that then you may as before is ſhewed, giue him with his oats a few ſpilted beans, or elſe waſh his oats in a little ſtrong ale or beare, or in the whites of a couple of egges.

Touching his exerciſe, it conſiſteth in two kindes, the one ayring, the other courſing: Ayring is a moderate and gentle exerciſe, which you ſhall vſe morning and euening, by riding or leading your horſe a foot pace (but riding is better, and leſſe in danger of cold) in the morning after his water vp to the hils, and in the euening after his water by the riuers ſide, by the ſpace of an houre or two together; and before you leade him forth to aire, you ſhall be ſure to giue him a rere egge broken into his mouth, as ſoone as his bridle is put on, for it will increaſe winde: and this airing you ſhall by no means forbeare, but vpon his dayes of purging or ſweating, or when it much raineth, for then to aire is vnwholeſome. Againe, if your horſe be very fat, you ſhall aire before Sunne riſe, and after Sunne ſet; but if he be leane, then you ſhall let him haue all the ſtrength and comfort of the Sunne you can deuiſe; and during this airing, you ſhall be ſure that your horſe be cloathed very warme, eſpecially before the breaſt, and on each ſide the heart, for cold to a running horſe is mortall.

Of his exerciſe by ayring.

You ſhall courſe your horſe according to his ſtrength and

Exerciſe by courſing.

and abilitie of body, that is to say, twice a weeke, thrice, or as oft as you see cause, and you shall course him sometimes in his cloathes to make him sweat, and consume grease, and that must be done moderately and gently; and sometimes without his cloth, to increase winde; and that shall be done sharply and swiftly: you shall by keeping your horse fasting the night before, be sure that his body be empty before he doe course: to wash his tongue and nostrils with vineger, or to pisse in his mouth ere you take his backe, is very wholesome: you shall leade him in your hand well & warme cloathed to the course, and there vncloath him, and rub his limbes well: then hauing courst him, after a little breath-taking cloath him againe, and so ride him home, there rub him throughly, and let him stand till he be fully cold, which perceiued, let his first meat you giue him, be a handfull or two of the eares of pollard wheat: then after, his ordinary food as afore-said.

Of sweats. There is also another exercise for your running horse, which is sweats in his cloathes, either abroad or in the house: for sweats in his cloathes abroad, they are those which are taken vpon the course, and are formerly spoke of, that they must be giuen by a moderate galloping, no maine running, and as soone as your horse hath past ouer his course, and is in a high sweat, you shall instantly haue him home, and there lay more cloathes vpon him, and keepe him stirring till he haue sweat so in the stable an houre or more; then abate his cloathes by little and little, till hee be perfectly cooled and dried, which you must further by rubbing him continually with drie cloathes, and by laying drie cloathes on, and taking the wet away: but for sweats in his cloathes, without any exercise abroad, you shall giue them either when the

weather is ſo much vnſeaſonable, that you cannot goe forth, or when your horſe is ſo much in danger of lameneſſe, that you dare not ſtraine him; and you ſhall doe it thus: firſt take a blanket folded and warmed very hot, and wrap it about his body; then ouer it lay two or three more, and wiſpe them round; then ouer them as many couerlids, and pin them faſt and cloſe; then make the horſe ſtirre vp and downe in the ſtable till he begin to ſweat; then lay on more cloathes, and as the ſweat trickleth downe his face, ſo rub it away with drie cloathes till he haue ſweat ſufficiently; then (as before ſhewed) abate the cloathes by little and little, and rub him in euery part till he be as drie as at firſt.

Of ſcouring him.

After euery courſe or ſweat you ſhall ſcoure or purge your horſe in the ſame manner, and with the ſame medicine that you did your hunting horſe; for it is the beſt that can by Art be inuented, being both a purge and a reſtoratiue, cleanſing and comforting all the parts of a horſes body: but if you thinke it purgeth not enough, then you ſhall take twenty raiſins of the Sunne, the ſtones pickt out, and ten figges ſlit in the midſt, boile them in a pottle of faire running water, till it come to be thicke, then mixe it with powder of Liquorice, Anniſeſeeds, and Sugar-candie, till it come to a ſtiffe paſte, then make pretty round balles thereof, and roule them vp in butter, and giue your horſe three or foure of them the next morning after his ſweat or courſe, and ride him an houre after, and then ſet him vp warme.

Ordering after exerciſe.

After your horſe hath beene courſt or ſweat, and is as before ſaid, cold and drie, you ſhall then vnbridle him, giue him ſome few wheat eares, and then at an houre or two after a little of a very ſweet maſh, then ſome bread, after which at his due houre dreſſe him, and

giue him when you finde him thirſtie ſome cold water, with a ball of your leauen diſſolued into it, and ſo let him ſtand till you feede him for all night.

Generall rules for a running horſe.

Courſe not your horſe ſore for at leaſt foure or fiue dayes before you run your match, leaſt the ſoreneſſe of his limbes abate him of his ſpeede.

Except your horſe be a very foule feeder, muzzell him not aboue two or three nights before his match, and the night before his bloudy courſes.

Giue your horſe as well his gentle courſes as his ſharp courſes vpon the race he muſt run, that he may as well finde comfort as diſpleaſure thereon.

In training of your horſe, obſerue not the number of the miles, but the labour fit for your horſe.

Be ſure vpon the match day that your horſe be emptie, and that he take his reſt vntroubled till you prepare to leade him forth.

Shooe your horſe euer a day before you runne him, that the paine of the hammers knocks may be out of his feete.

Saddle your horſe on the race day in the ſtable before you leade him forth, and fixe both the pannell and the girths to his backe and ſides with Shooe-makers waxe, to preuent all dangers.

Leade your horſe to his courſe with all gentleneſſe, and giue him leaue to ſmell to other horſes dung, that thereby hee may be inticed to ſtale and empty his body as he goes.

When you come to the place where you muſt ſtart, firſt rub his limbs well, then vncloath him, then take his backe, and the word giuen, ſtart him with all gentleneſſe and quietneſſe that may be, leaſt doing any thing raſhly you happen to choake him in his owne winde.

And

And thus much for the ordering and dieting of the running horſe, and the particularities belonging to the ſame.

Now for our huſbandmans trauelling horſe, which is to carry him in his iournies and about his neceſſary buſineſſe in the Country, he ſhall firſt feede him with the beſt ſweet hay, drie oates, or drie beanes and oates mixt together: in his trauell he ſhall feede him according to his ſtomacke, more or leſſe, and in his reſt at a certaine proportion, as, halfe a pecke at each watring is vtterly ſufficient. Generall rules for a trauelling horſe.

In your trauell feede your horſe early, that hee may take his reſt ſoone.

In trauell by no meanes waſh nor walke your horſe, but be ſure to rub him cleane.

Water him a mile before you come to your Inne, or more, as ſhall lie in your iourney; or if you faile therof, forbeare it till next morning, for water hath often done hurt, want of water neuer did any.

Let your horſe neither eate nor drinke when he is extreame hot, for both are vnwholeſome.

When the dayes are extreame hot, labour your horſe morning and euening, and forbeare high noone.

Take not your ſaddle off ſodainly, but at leiſure, and laying on the cloth, ſet on the ſaddle again till he be cold.

Litter your horſe deepe, and in the dayes of his reſt let it lie alſo vnder him.

Dreſſe your horſe twice a day when hee reſts, and once when he trauels.

If the horſe be ſtoned, let him goe to ſoile, and bee purged with graſſe in May; a moneth is time long enough, and that graſſe which growes in Orchards vnder trees is beſt.

Let bloud Spring and Fall, for they are the best times to preuent sicknesses.

In your iournying light at euery steepe hill, for it is a great refreshing and comfort to your horse.

Before you sleepe euery night in your iourney, see all your horses feet stopt with Oxe dung, for it taketh away the heat of trauell and surbating.

Many other necessary rules there are, but so depending vpon these already shewed, that who so keepeth them, shall not be ignorant of any of the rest, for they differ more in name then nature.

Chap. VII.

How to cure all generall inward sicknesses which trouble the whole body, of Feuers of all sorts, Plagues, Infections, and such like.

Sicknesses in generall are of two kindes, one offending the whole body, the other a particular member; the first hidden and not visible, the other apparant and known by his outward demonstration. Of the first then, which offendeth the whole body, are Feauers of al sorts, as the Quotidian, the Tertian, the Quartan, the Continuall, the Hittique, the Feauer in Autumne, in Summer, or in Winter, the Feauer by surfet, Feauer pestilent, Feauer accidentall, or the generall plague. They are all knowne by these signes; much trembling, panting and sweating, a sullen countenance that was wont to bee cheerefull, hot breath, faintnesse in labour, decay of stomacke, and costiueneesse in the body: any or all of which when you perceiue, first let the horse bloud, and after

The cure. giue him this drinke: Take of *Selladine* roots and leaues and all a good handfull, as much *Wormewood*, and as much *Rew*, wash them well, and then bruise them in a Morter,

Morter, which done, boile them in a quart of Ale well, then ſtraine them, and adde to the liquor halfe a pound of ſweet butter ; then being but luke-warme giue it the horſe to drinke.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Head-ach, Frenzie, or Staggers.

THe ſignes to know theſe diſeaſes, which indeed are all of one nature, and worke all one effect of mortalitie, are hanging downe of the head, watrie eyes, rage and reeling : and the cure is, to let the horſe bloud in the necke three mornings together, and euery morning to take a great quantitie ; then after each mornings bloud-letting to giue the horſe this drinke: Take a quart of Ale, and boile it with a bigge white-bread cruſt, then take it from the fire, and diſſolue three or foure ſpoonefuls of honey into it, then luke-warme giue it the horſe to drinke, and couer his temples ouer with a plaiſter of pitch, and keepe his head exceeding warme; let his meat be little, and his ſtable darke. The cure.

CHAP. IX.

Of the ſleeping Euill.

THe Sleeping Euill or Lethargie in horſes proceeds from cold, flemie, moiſt humours, which binde vp the vitall parts, and makes them dull and heauy : the ſignes are, continuall ſleeping, or deſire thereunto. The cure is, to keepe him much waking, and twice in one weeke to giue him as much ſweet Sope (in nature of a pill) as a duckes egge, and then after giue him to drinke a little new milke and hony. The cure.

CHAP. X.

Of the Falling-euill, Planet-ſtrooke, Night-Mare, or Palſey.

THough theſe diſeaſes haue ſeuerall faces, and looke as though there were much difference betweene them,

them, yet they are in nature all one, and proceed all from one offence, which is onely cold flegmaticke humours, ingendred about the braine, and benumming the ſenſes, weakning the members, ſometimes cauſing a horſe to fall downe, and then it is called the Falling-euill: ſometimes weakning but one member onely, then it is called Planet-ſtrooke: ſometimes oppreſſing a horſes ſtomack, and making him ſweat in his ſleepe, and then it is called the Night-Mare: and ſometimes ſpoiling an eſpeciall member, by ſome ſtrange contraction, and then it is called a Palſey. The cure for any of theſe infirmities, is to giue the horſe this purging pill: Take of Tarre three ſpoonfuls, of ſweet butter the like quantitie, beat them well together with the powder of Liquorice, Anniſe-ſeeds, and Sugar-candy, till it be like paſte, then make it into three round balles, and put into each ball two or three cloues of Garlicke, and ſo giue them vnto the horſe, obſerning to warme him both before and after, and keepe him faſting two or three houres likewiſe both before and after.

The cure.

CHAP. XI.

Of the generall Crampe, or Conuulſion of Sinewes.

CRamps are taken to be the contracting or drawing together of the Sinewes of any one member: but Conuulſions are when the whole body, from the ſetting on of the head to the extremeſt parts, are generally contracted and ſtifned. The cure of either is, firſt to chafe and rub the member contracted with Vineger and common Oyle, and then to wrap it all ouer with wet Hay or rotten Litter, or elſe with wet woollen cloathes, either of which is a preſent remedy.

The cure.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

Of any Cold or Cough whatſoeuer, wet or drie, or for any Conſumption or putrifaction of the Lungs whatſoeuer.

A Cold is got by vnnaturall heats, and too ſodaine coolings, and theſe colds ingender Coughs, and thoſe Coughs putrifaction or rottenneſſe of the lungs. The cure therefore for them all in generall, is to take a handfull or two of the white and greeniſh moſſe which growes vpon an old Oake pole, or any old Oake wood, and boile it in a quart of milke till it be thicke, and being cold turned to Ielly, then ſtraine it, and giue it the horſe luke-warme euery morning till his cough end. The cure.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the running Glanders, or mourning of the Chine.

TAke of *Auripigmentum* two drammes, of *Tuſſilaginis* made into powder as much, then mixing them together with Turpentine till they be like paſte, and making thereof little cakes, drie them before the fire: then take a Chafing-diſh and coales, and laying one or two of the cakes thereon, couer them with a Tunnell, and then the ſmoake riſing, put the Tunnell into the horſes noſtrils, and let the ſmoake goe vp into his head; which done, ride the horſe till he ſweat: doe thus once euery morning before he be watred, till the running at his noſtrils ceaſe, and the kirnels vnder his chaps weare away.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of Hide-bound, or conſumption of the fleſh.

HIde-bound, or conſumption of the fleſh, proceedeth from vnreaſonable trauell, diſorderly diet, & many ſurfets. It is knowne by a generall diſlike and leanneſſe ouer the whole body, and by the ſticking of the skinne cloſe to the body, in ſuch ſort that it will not riſe from the body. The cure is firſt to let the horſe bloud, and The cure.

then giue him to drinke three or foure mornings together, a quart of new milke, with two ſpoonfuls of hony, and one ſpoonfull of courſe Treakle: then let his foode be either ſodden Barly, warme Graines and ſalt, or Beanes ſpelted in a mill; his drinke Maſhes.

CHAP. XV.

Of the breaſt paine, or any other ſickneſſe proceeding from the heart, as the Anticor, and ſuch like.

THeſe diſeaſes proceede from too ranke feeding, and much fatneſſe: the ſignes are, a foltring in his fore-legges, a diſableneſſe to bowe downe his necke, and a trembling ouer all his body. The cure is to let him bloud, and giue him three mornings together two ſpoonfuls of *Diapente* in a quart of Ale or Beare; for it alone putteth away all infection from the heart.

The cure.

CHAP. XVI.

Of tired Horſes.

IF your horſe be tired, either in iournying, or in any hunting match, your beſt helpe for him is to giue him warme vrine to drinke, and letting him bloud in the mouth, to ſuffer him to licke vp and ſwallow the ſame. Then if you can come where any Nettles are, to rub his mouth and ſheath well therewith: then gently to ride him till you come to your reſting place, where ſet him vp very warme; and before you goe to bed, giue him ſixe ſpoonfuls of *Aqua vitæ* to drinke, and as much prouender as he will eate. The next morning rub his legges with Sheeps-foot Oyle, and it will bring freſh nimbleneſſe to his Sinewes.

CHAP. XVII.

Of diſeaſes in the Stomacke, as Surfets, loathing of Meats or Drinke, or ſuch like.

IF your horſe with the glut of prouender, or eating raw foode, haue giuen ſuch offence to his ſtomacke,

that

that he caſteth vp all he eateth or drinketh, you ſhal firſt giue him a comfortable drench, as *Diapente*, or *Treaphamicon* in Ale or Beare; and then keeping him faſting, let him haue no food but what he eateth out of your hand, which would be Bread well bak't and old, and after euery two or three bits a locke of ſweet hay; and his drinke would be onely new milke till his ſtomacke haue gotten ſtrength: and in a bagge you ſhall continually hang at his noſe ſowre brown-bread ſteep't in Vineger, at which he muſt euer ſmell, and his ſtomacke will quickly come againe to his firſt ſtrength.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Foundring in the Body.

FOundring in the body is of all ſurfets the mortalleſt, and ſooneſt gotten: it proceedeth from intemperate riding a horſe when he is fat, and then ſodainly ſuffring him to take cold: then waſhing a fat horſe there is nothing ſooner bringeth this infirmitie. The ſignes are ſadneſſe of countenance, ſtaring haire, ſtiffneſſe of limbe, and loſſe of belly: and the cure is onely to giue him wholeſome ſtrong meat, a bread of cleane beanes, and warme drinke, and for two or three mornings together a quart of Ale brued with Pepper and Cynamon, and a ſpoonfull of Treakle. The cure.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Hungry Euill.

THe Hungry Euill is an vnnaturall and ouer-haſtie greedines in a horſe to deuoure his meat faſter then he can chew it, and is onely knowne by his greedie ſnatching at his meate, as if he would deuoure it whole. The cure is, to giue him to drinke Milke and Wheat-meale mixt together by a quart at a time, and to feede him with prouender by a little and a little, till hee forſake it. The cure.

CHAP. XX.

Of the diseases of the Liuer, as Inflamations, Obstructions, and Consumptions.

THe Liuer, which is the vessell of bloud, is subiect to many diseases, according to the distemperature of the bloud: and the signes to know it is a stinking breath, and a mutuall looking towards his body: and the cure is to take *Aristolochia longa*, and boile it in running water till the halfe part be consumed, and let the horse drinke continually thereof, and it will cure all euils about the Liuer, or any inward conduits of bloud.

The cure.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the diseases of the Gall, and especially of the Yellowes.

FRom the ouerflowing of the Gall, which is the vessell of choller, spring many mortall diseases, especially the Yellowes, which is an extreame faint mortall sicknesse if it be not preuented betime: the signes are yellownes of the eyes and skin, and chiefly vnderneath his vpper lip next to his fore-teeth, a sodaine and faint falling downe by the high way, or in the stable, and an vniuersall sweat ouer all the body. The cure is, first to let the horse bloud in the necke, in the mouth, and vnder the eyes; then take two penny-worth of Saffron, which being dried and made into fine powder, mixe it with sweet Butter, and in manner of a pill giue it in bals to the horse three mornings together: let his drinke bee warme, and his hay sprinkled with water.

The cure.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the sicknesse of the Spleene.

THe Spleene, which is the vessell of Melancholy, when it is ouer-charged therewith, growes painfull, hard and great, in such sort that sometimes it is visible. The signes to know it, is much groaning, hastie feeding, and a continuall looking to his left side onely. The cure is:

is: Take *Agrimonie*, and boile a good quantitie of it in the water which the horſe ſhall drinke; and chopping the leaues ſmall, mixe them with ſweet Butter, and giue the horſe two or three good round bals thereof in the manner of Pilles. The cure.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Dropſie, or euill habit of the body.

THe Dropſie is that euill habit of the body, which ingendred by ſurfets and vnreaſonable labour, altereth the colours and complexions of horſes, and changeth the haires, in ſuch an vnnaturall ſort, that a man ſhal not know the Beaſt with which he hath beene moſt familiar. The cure is, to take a handfull or two of *Wormewood*, and boiling it in Ale or Beere, a quart or better, giue the horſe it to drinke luke-warme Morning and Euening, and let him onely drinke his water at Noone time of the day. The cure.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of the Chollicke, Belly-ake, and Belly-bound.

THe Chollicke or Belly-ake is a fretting, gnawing, or ſwelling of the Belly or great bag, proceeding from windy humours, or from the eating of greene Corne or Pulſe, hot Graines without Salt or labour, or Bread dowe bak't: and Belly-bound is when a horſe cannot dung. The cure of the Chollicke or Belly-ake is, to take good ſtore of the hearbe *Dill*, and boile it in the water you giue your horſe to drinke; but if he cannot dung, then you ſhall boile in his water good ſtore of the hearbe *Fumecrete*, and it will make him looſe without danger or hurting. The cure.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the Laxe, or Bloudy Flixe.

THe Laxe or Bloudy Flixe is an vnnatural looſeneſſe in a horſes body, which not being ſtaied, will for want

want of other excrement make a horſe void bloud only.

The cure. The cure is, take a handfull of the hearbe *Shepheards-Purſe*, and boyle it in a quart of ſtrong Ale, and when it is luke-warme, take the ſeeds of the hearbe *Wood-roſe* ſtamp't, and put it therein, and giue it the horſe to drinke.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the falling of the Fundament.

THis commeth through miſlike and weakneſſe; and

The cure. the cure is: Take *Towne-Creſſes*, and hauing dried them to powder, with your hand put vp the Fundament, and then ſtrow the powder thereon, after it lay a little hony thereon, and then ſtrow more of the powder, mixt with the powder of *Comin*, and it helpeth.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of Bots and Wormes of all ſorts.

THe Bots and gnawing of Wormes is a grieuous paine, and the ſignes to know them is the horſes oft beating his belly, and tumbling and wallowing on the ground, with much deſire to lie on his backe. The cure

The cure. is: Take either the ſeeds bruiſed, or the leaues chopt of the hearbe *Amaes*, and mixe it with hony, and making two or three bals thereof, make the horſe ſwallow them downe.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of paine in the Kidnies, Paine-piſſe, or the Stone.

ALL theſe diſeaſes ſpring from one ground, which is onely grauell and hard matter gathered together in the Kidnies, and ſo ſtopping the conduits of Vrine: the ſignes are only that the horſe will oft ſtraine to piſſe,

The cure. but cannot. The cure is, to take a handfull of *Maydenhaire*, and ſteepe it all night in a quart of ſtrong Ale, and giue it the horſe to drinke euery morning till he be well: this will breake any ſtone whatſoeuer in a horſe.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of the Strangullion.

THis is a ſoreneſſe in the horſes yard, and a hot burning ſmarting when he piſſeth: the ſignes are, hee will piſſe oft, yet but a drop or two at once. The cure is, to boile in the water which he drinketh good ſtore of the hearbe *Mayth* or *Hogs-fenell*, and it will cure him. The cure.

CHAP. XXX.

Of piſſing Bloud.

THis commeth with ouer-trauelling a horſe, or trauelling a horſe ſore in the winter when hee goeth to graſſe. The cure is: Take *Ariſtolochia longa*, a handfull, and boile it in a quart of Ale, and giue it the horſe to drinke luke-warme, and giue him alſo reſt. The cure.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the Colt-euill, mattring of the yard, falling of the yard, ſhedding the Seede.

ALL theſe euils proceede from much luſt in a horſe: and the cure is, the powder of the hearbe *Anit*, and the leaues of *Bettonie*; ſtampe them with white wine, to a moiſt ſalue, and annoint the ſore therewith, and it will heale all imperfection in the yard: but if the horſe ſhed his ſeede, then beate Venice-turpentine and Sugar together, and giue him euery morning a good round ball thereof till the fluxe ſtay. The cure.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the particular diſeaſes in Mares, barrenneſſe, conſumption, rage of lone, caſting foales, hardneſſe to foale, and how to make a Mare caſt the Foale.

IF you would haue your Mare barraine, let good ſtore of the hearbe *Agnus caſtus* be boiled in the water ſhee drinkes. If you would haue her fruitfull, then boile good ſtore of *Mother-wort* in the water which ſhee drinketh: if ſhe loſe her belly, which ſheweth a conſumption

of

want of other excrement make a horſe void bloud only.

The cure. The cure is, take a handfull of the hearbe *Shepheards-Purſe*, and boyle it in a quart of ſtrong Ale, and when it is luke-warme, take the ſeeds of the hearbe *Wood-roſe* ſtamp't, and put it therein, and giue it the horſe to drinke.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the falling of the Fundament.

The cure. THis commeth through miſlike and weakneſſe; and the cure is: Take *Towne-Creſſes*, and hauing dried them to powder, with your hand put vp the Fundament, and then ſtrow the powder thereon, after it lay a little hony thereon, and then ſtrow more of the powder, mixt with the powder of *Comin*, and it helpeth.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of Bots and Wormes of all ſorts.

THe Bots and gnawing of Wormes is a grieuous paine, and the ſignes to know them is the horſes oft beating his belly, and tumbling and wallowing on the ground, with much deſire to lie on his backe. The cure

The cure. is: Take either the ſeeds bruiſed, or the leaues chopt of the hearbe *Amaes*, and mixe it with hony, and making two or three bals thereof, make the horſe ſwallow them downe.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of paine in the Kidnies, Paine-piſſe, or the Stone.

ALL theſe diſeaſes ſpring from one ground, which is onely grauell and hard matter gathered together in the Kidnies, and ſo ſtopping the conduits of Vrine: the ſignes are only that the horſe will oft ſtraine to piſſe,

The cure. but cannot. The cure is, to take a handfull of *Maydenhaire*, and ſteepe it all night in a quart of ſtrong Ale, and giue it the horſe to drinke euery morning till he be well: this will breake any ſtone whatſoeuer in a horſe.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of the Strangullion.

THis is a ſoreneſſe in the horſes yard, and a hot burning ſmarting when he piſſeth: the ſignes are, hee will piſſe oft, yet but a drop or two at once. The cure is, to boile in the water which he drinketh good ſtore of the hearbe *Mayth* or *Hogs-fenell*, and it will cure him. The cure.

CHAP. XXX.

Of piſſing Bloud.

THis commeth with ouer-trauelling a horſe, or trauelling a horſe ſore in the winter when hee goeth to graſſe. The cure is: Take *Ariſtolochia longa*, a handfull, and boile it in a quart of Ale, and giue it the horſe to drinke luke-warme, and giue him alſo reſt. The cure.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the Colt-euill, mattring of the yard, falling of the yard, ſhedding the Seede.

ALL theſe euils proceede from much luſt in a horſe: and the cure is, the powder of the hearbe *Anit*, and the leaues of *Bettonie*; ſtampe them with white wine, to a moiſt ſalue, and annoint the ſore therewith, and it will heale all imperfection in the yard: but if the horſe ſhed his ſeede, then beate Venice-turpentine and Sugar together, and giue him euery morning a good round ball thereof till the fluxe ſtay. The cure.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the particular diſeaſes in Mares, barrenneſſe, conſumption, rage of loue, caſting foales, hardneſſe to foale, and how to make a Mare caſt the Foale.

IF you would haue your Mare barraine, let good ſtore of the hearbe *Agnus caſtus* be boiled in the water ſhee drinkes. If you would haue her fruitfull, then boile good ſtore of *Mother-wort* in the water which ſhee drinketh: if ſhe loſe her belly, which ſheweth a conſumption

of

of the wombe, you ſhall then giue her a quart of Brine to drinke, *Mug-wort* being boiled therein. If your Mare through pride of keeping grow into too extreame luſt, ſo that ſhe will neglect her food through the violence of her fleſhly appetite, as it is often ſeene amongſt them, you ſhall houſe her for two or three dayes, and giue her euery morning a ball of Butter and *Agnus caſtus* chopt together. If you would haue your Mare to caſt a foale, take a handfull of *Dettonie*, and boile it in a quart of Ale, and it will deliuer her preſently. If ſhe cannot foale, take the hearbe *Horſe-mint*, and either drie it or ſtampe it, and take the powder or the iuyce, and mixe it with ſtrong Ale, and giue it the Mare, and it will helpe her. If your Mare from former bruiſings or ſtroakes be apt to caſt her foales, as many are, you ſhall keepe her at graſſe very warme, and once in a weeke giue her a warme maſh of drinke: this ſecretly knitteth beyond expectation.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of drinking venome, as horſe-leeches, hens dung, or ſuch like.

IF your horſe haue drunke Horſe-leeches, hens dung, feathers, or ſuch-like venemous things, which you ſhall know by his panting, ſwelling, or ſcouring, you ſhall take the hearbe *Sow-thiſtle*, and drying it, beat it into powder, and put three ſpoonfuls thereof into a quart of Ale, and giue it the horſe to drinke.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of Suppoſitaries, Gliſters and Purgations.

IF your horſe by ſickneſſe, ſtrict diet, or too vehement trauell, grow drie and coſtiue in his body, as it is ordinary; the eaſieſt meanes in extremitie to helpe him, is to giue him a Suppoſitarie; the beſt of which is, to take a Candle of foure in the pound, and cut off fiue inches at the bigger end, and thruſting it vp a good way with your hand into his fundament, preſently clap downe

his

his taile, and hold it hard to his tuell a quarter of an houre, or halfe an houre: and then giue him libertie to dung; but if this be not ſtrong inough: then you ſhall giue him a gliſter, and that is, take foure handfuls of the hearbe *Aniſe*, and boyle it in a pottell of running water, till halfe be conſumed, then take the decoction and mixe with it a pinte of Sallet-oyle, and a pretty quantitie of ſalt, and with a gliſter-pipe giue it him at his tuell. But if this be too weake, then giue him a purgation, thus. Take twenty *Reiſons* of the Sun, without ſtones, and ten *Figges* ſlit, boyle them in a pottell of running water, till it come to a gellie; then mixe it with the powder of *Licoras*, *Aniſeeds* & *Sugar-candy*, till it be like paſte, then make it into bals, and role it in ſweet Butter, and ſo giue it the Horſe, to the quantitie of three Hen egges.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of Neeſings and Frictions.

THere be other two excellent helpes for ſicke horſes, as Frictions, and Neeſings: the firſt to comfort the outward parts of the body, when the vitall powers are aſtoniſhed: the other to purge the head when it is ſtopt with fleame, cold, or other thick humours. And of Frictions, the beſt is *Vinegar* and *Patch-greaſe* melted together, and very hot chafed into the horſes body againſt the haire. And to make a horſe neeſe, there is nothing better then to take a bunch of *Pellitory* of *Spaine*, and binding it vnto a ſticke, thruſt it vp a horſes noſtrill, and it will make him neeſe without hurt or violence.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of diſeaſes in the Eyes, as watrie Eyes, bloud-ſhotten Eyes, dimme Eyes, moone Eyes, ſtroke in the Eye, wart in the Eye, inflamation in the Eye, Pearle, Pin, Webbe, or Haw.

VNto the Eye belongeth many diſeaſes, all which haue their true ſignes in their names, and as touch-

ing that which is watry, bloudſhotten, dimme, moone, ſtricken, or inflamed, they haue all one cure. The cure is,

The cure. Take *Wormewood*, and beate it in a morter with the gall of a Bull, ſtraine it, and annoint the horſes eyes therwith, and it is an approued remedy. But for the Wart, Pearle, Pin or Webbe, which are euils growne in and vpon the Eye, to take them off, take the iuyce of the herbe *Betyn*, and waſh his eyes therewith, and it will weare the ſpots away: For the Haw euery Smith can cut it out.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of the Impoſtume in the Eare, Pole-euill, Fiſtula, ſwelling after bloud-letting, any gald backe, Canker in the Withers, Sitfaſt, Wens, Nauel-gall, or any hollow vlcer.

THeſe diſeaſes are ſo apparant and common that they neede no further deſcription but their names,

The cure. and the moſt certaine cure is to take Clay of a mud or lome wall, without Lime, the ſtrawes and all, and boyling it in ſtrong Vinegar, apply it plaiſter-wiſe to the ſore, and it will of it owne nature ſearch to the bottome, and heale it: prouided that if you ſee any dead or proud fleſh ariſe, that then you either eate or cut it away.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the Viues.

FOr the Viues, which is an inflamation of the Kirnels betweene the chap and the necke of the horſe: take *Pepper* one penniworth, of *Swines greaſe* one ſpoonefull, the iuyce of a handfull of *Rewe*, *Vinegar* two ſpoonfuls, mixe them together, and then put it equally into both the horſes eares, and then tie them vp with two flat laces, then ſhake the eares that the medicine may goe downe, which done, let the horſe bloud in the necke, and in the temple veines, and it is a certaine cure.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of the Strangle, or any Bile, Botch, or other Impoſtume whatſoeuer.

ALL theſe diſeaſes are of one nature, being only hard Biles or Impoſtumes gathered together by euill humors, either betweene the chaps, or elſewhere on the body. The cure is: take *Sothernwood*, and dry it to powder, and with *Barly* meale, and the yolke of an *Egge* make it into a ſalue, and lay it to the Impoſtume, and it will ripen it, breake it, and heale it. The cure.

CHAP. XL.

Of the Canker in the Noſe, or any other part of the body.

TO heale any Canker in what part ſoeuer it be: take the iuyce of *Plantaine*, as much *Vinegar*, and the ſame waight of the powder of *Allom*, and with it annoint the ſore twice or thrice a day, and it will kill it, and cure it. The cure.

CHAP. XLI.

Of ſtaunching of bloud, whether it be at the Noſe, or proceede from any wound.

IF your horſe bleed violently at the noſe, and will not be ſtayd, then you ſhall take *Bittony*, and ſtampe it in a morter with Bay-ſalt, or other white Salt, and ſtop it into the horſes noſe, or apply it to the wound, and it will ſtanch it: but if you be ſodainly taken, as riding by the high way or otherwiſe, and cannot get this hearbe, you ſhall then take any woollen cloth, or any felt Hat, and with a knife ſcrape a fine Lint from it, and apply it to the bleeding place, and it will ſtaunch it.

CHAP. XLII.

Of the diſeaſes in the mouth, as bloody Rifts, Iigs, Lampas, Camery, Inflamation, Tongue-hurt, or the Barbs.

IF you finde any infirmitie in your horſes mouth, as the bloudy Rifts, which are Chaps or Rifts in the pallate of the horſes mouth; the Iigs, which are little Puſtuls or Bladders within the horſes lips; the Lampaſſe,

which is an excreſſion of fleſh aboue the teeth, the Camery, which is little warts in the roofe of the mouth, Inflamation, which is, Blifters; Barbs, which are two little paps vnder the tongue, or any hurt on the tongue by Bitte or otherwiſe; you ſhall take the leaues of *Wormewood*, and the leaues of *Shirtwit*, and beat them in a morter with a little Honey, and with it annoynt the ſores, and it will heale them, as for the Lampaſſe they muſt be burnt away, which the ignoranteſt Smith can doe.

The cure.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of payne in the teeth, or looſe teeth.

FOr any paine in the teeth, take *Bettony*, and ſeeth it in Ale or Vineger till a halfe part be conſumed, and waſh all the gums therewith: but if they be looſe, then onely rub them with the leaues of *Elecampana* or *Horſhelme*, after they haue bin let bloud, & it will faſten them.

CHAP. XLIIII.

Of the Cricke in the Necke.

FOr the Cricke in the Necke, you ſhall firſt chafe it with the Friction before ſpecified, and then annoynt and bath it with *Sope* and *Vinegar*, boyld together.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the falling of the Creſt, Mangines in the Mayne, or ſhedding of the haire.

ALL theſe diſeaſes proceede from pouertie, miſlike, or ouer-riding, and the beſt cure of the falling of the Creſt, is bloud-letting, and proud keeping with ſtore of meate, for ſtrength and fatneſſe euer will raiſe vp the Creſt, but if the Mayne be mangie, you ſhall annoynt it with *Butter* and *Brimſtone*, and if the haire fall away, then take *Sothernwood*, and burne it to aſhes, then take thoſe aſhes and mixing them with common Oyle, annoynt the place therewith, and it will bring haire preſently, ſmooth, thicke, and faire.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVI.

Of payne in the Withers.

A Horſes Withers are ſubiect to many griefes and ſwellings, which proceed from cold humours, ſometimes from euill Saddles, therefore if at any time you ſee any ſwelling about them, you ſhal take the hearbe *Hartstongue*, and boyle it with the Oyle of *Roſes*, and very hot apply it to the ſore, and it will aſſwage it, or elſe breake it and heale it.

CHAP. XLVII.

Of ſwaying the Backe, or weakeneſſe in the backe.

THeſe two infirmities are dangerous, and may be eaſed, but neuer abſolutely cured, therefore where you finde them, take *Colworts* and boyle them in Oyle, and mixing them in a little Beane-meale charge the Backe, and it will ſtrengthen it.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Of the Itch in the taile, or of the generall Scabbe and Manginnes, or of the Farcie.

FOr any of theſe diſeaſes take freſh greaſe, and yealow *Arſnicke*, mixe them together, and where the Manginneſſe or Itch is, there rub it hard in, the ſore being made raw: but if it be for the Farcie, then with a knife ſlit all the knots, both hard and ſoft, and then rub in the medicine: which done, tie vp the Horſe, ſo as he may not come to bite himſelfe, and then after he hath ſtood two or three houres, take old piſſe and ſalt boyled together, and with it waſh away the oyntment, and then put the Horſe to meate; doe thus two or three daies together, prouided alwaies that you firſt let him bloud, and take good ſtore from him; and alſo giue him euery morning a ſtrong ſcouring, or a ſtrong purge, both which are ſhewed before.

CHAP. XLIX.

Of any Halting which commeth by ſtraine, or ſtroke, either before or behinde, from the ſhoulder or hippe, downe to the Hoofe.

THere be many infirmities which make a Horſe halt, as pinching the ſhoulder, wrench in the ſhoulder, wrench in the neather ioynt, ſplatting the ſhoulder, ſhoulder pight, ſtraines in ioynts, & ſuch like: all which, ſince they happen by one accident, as namely, by the violence of ſome ſlip or ſtraine, they may be cured by one medicine, and it is thus. After you haue found where the griefe is, as you may doe by griping and pinching euery ſeuerall member; then where he moſt complaineth there is his moſt griefe, You ſhall take (if the ſtraine be new) Vinegar, *Bolearmoniarke*, the whites of Egges, and Beane-flower, and hauing beaten them to a perfect ſalue, lay them very hot to the ſore place, and it will cure it; but if the ſtraine be old, then take Vinegar and Butter, and melting them together with Wheat-bran, make it into a Pultis, and lay it to the ſore as hot as may be, and it will take away the griefe.

CHAP. L.

Of Foundring in the Feete,

OF Foundring there be two ſorts, a dry and a wet, the dry foundering is incurable, the wet is thus to be helpt. Firſt pare all the ſoales of his feete ſo thin that you may ſee the quicke, then let him blood at euery toe, and let them bleede well, then ſtop the veyne with *Tallow* and *Roſen*, and hauing tackt hollow ſhooes on his feet, ſtop them with *Branne*, *Tarre* and *Tallow*, as boyling hot as may be, and renue it once in two dayes, for a weeke together, then exerciſe him much, and his feet will come to their true vſe and nimbleneſſe.

The cure.

CHAP.

CHAP. LI.

Of the Splent, Curbe, Bone-spauin, or any knobbe or bony excression or ringbone.

A Splent is a bony excression vnder the knee or the fore-legge, the Curbe is the like behinde the hinder hough, the Spauin is the like on the inside of the hinder hough, and the Ringbone is the like on the cornet of the hoofe. And the cure is, first vpon the top of the excression, make a slit with your knife the length of a Barly-corne, or a little more, and then with a fine cornet, raise the Skinne from the bone, and hauing made it hollow the compasse of the excression and no more: take a little lint and dip it into the Oyle of *Origanum*, & thrust it into the hole and couer the knob, and so let it bide till you see it rot, and that Nature casteth out both the medicine and the Core. As for the Ring-bone you shall neede to scarifie and annoynt it with the Oyle onely. The cure.

CHAP. LII.

Of the Mallandar, Selander, Paines, Scratches, Mellet, Mules, Crowne-scabs, and such like.

FOr any of these sorances, you shall take *Verdigrease*, and soft grease, and grinding them together to an oyntment, put it in a boxe by it selfe: then take *Waxe*, *Hogges grease* and *Turpentine*, of each alike, and being melted together, put that salue into another boxe: then when you come to dresse the sore, after you haue taken off the scab and made it raw, you shall annoynt it with your greene salue of *Verdi-grease* and fresh grease onely for two or three dayes, it is a sharpe salue, and will kill the cankerous humour; then when you see the sore look faire, you shall take two parts of the yellow salue, and one part of the greene salue, and mixing them together, annoynt the sore therewith till it be whole, making it stronger or weaker as you shall finde occasion.

CHAP.

CHAP. LIII.

Of an vpper Attaint, or nether Attaint, or any hurt by ouer-reaching.

THese Attaints are ſtroaks or cuts by ouer-reaching, either on the backe ſinew of the fore-legge, on the heeles or nether ioynts, and may be ſafely healed by the ſame former medicine and meane which healeth the Mallander, or Sellander, in the former Chapter, onely for your ouer-reaches, you ſhall before you apply your ſalue, lay the ſore plaine and open, without hollowneſſe, and waſh it with beere and ſalt, or Vinegar and Salt.

CHAP. LIIII.

Of the infirmities of hooſes, as falſe quarters, looſe hooſes, eaſting hooſes, hooſe-bound, hooſe-running, hooſe brickle, hooſe hurt, hooſe ſoft, hooſe hard, or generally to preſerue hooſes.

THe hooſe is ſubiect to many miſeries; as firſt to falſe quarters, which commeth by pricking, and muſt be help't by good ſhooing, where the ſhooe muſt beare on euery part of the foot but vpon the falſe quarters only. If the hooſe be looſe, annoynt it with *Pitch* of *Burgundy*, and it will knit it: if it be cleane caſt off, then *Pitch* of *Burgundy* and *Tallow* molten together, will bring a new: if it be bound or ſtraitned, it muſt be very well opened at the heeles, the ſoale kept moyſt, and the cronet annointed with the fat of *Bacon* and *Tarre*. If the fruſh of the feet run with ſtinking matter, it muſt be ſtopt with *Soote*, *Turpentine* and *Bolearmoniake* mixt together: if it be brittle or broken, then annoynt it with *Pitch* and *Linſeed-oyle* molten to a ſoft ſalue: if it be ſoft, then ſtop it with *Sope*, and the aſhes of a burnt *Felt* mixt together: if the hooſes be hard, lay hot burning *Cinders* vpon them, and then ſtop them with *Tow* and *Tallow*: and generally for the preſerning of all good hooues, annoint them daily with the ſward or rinde of fat *Bacon*.

CHAP.

CHAP. LV.

Of the Blaud Spauen, or Hough bonye, or any other vnnaturall swelling, from what cause soeuer it proceedeth.

THese two sorances are pustuls, or soft round swellings, the first on the inside of the hinder hough, and the other on the very Huckell of the hough behinde, they are soft and very sore, and the cure is: First to take vp the veine aboue, and let it bleed onely from below, then hauing knit it fast with two Shoomakers ends on both sides the slit, cut the veine in two peeces; then take *Lin-seed*, and bruise it in a morter, then mixe it with *Cow-dung*, and heate it in a frying Pan, & so apply it to the swelling onely, and if it breake and runne, then heale it with a plaister of *Pitch*, and the horse shall neuer be troubled with Spauen more; but if the swelling come by strain or bruise, then take *Patch-grease*, and melting it, annoynt the sore therewith, holding a hot yron neare it to sinke in the grease, then fould a linnen cloth about it, and it will asswage all swellings whatsoeuer. The cure.

CHAP. LVI.

Of Winde-galles.

THese are little blebs or soft swellings on each side the Fetlocke, procured by much trauell on hard and stony waies. The cure is to pricke them, & to let out the Ielly, & then dry vp the sore with a plaister of *Pitch*. The cure.

CHAP. LVII.

Of Enterfairing or Shackell-gall, or any gallings.

ENterfayring is hewing one legge on another, and striking off the skinne: it proceedeth from weakenesse or straightnes of the horses pace, and Shackell-gall is any gall vnderneath the Fetlocke. The cure is, to annoynt them with *Turpentine* and *Verdigrease* mixt together, or *Turpentine* alone, if it rankle not too much. The cure.

CHAP. LVIII.

Hurts on the Cronet, as the quitterbone or Matlong.

The cure. THe Quitterbone is a hollow vlcer on the top of the Cronet, and so is the Matlong, and the cure is: First to taint it with *Verdi-grease* till you haue eaten out the Core, and made the wound cleane; then you shall heale it vp with the same salues that you heale the Scratches.

CHAP. LIX.

Of wounds in the foote, as grauelling, pricking, figge, retrayt, or cloying.

IF your horse haue any wound in his foote, by what mischance soeuer, you shall first search it, and see that it be cleare of any nayle poynt or other splent to annoy it, then wash it very well with white *Wine* and *Salt*, and after tent it with the oyntment called *Ægyptiacum*, and then lay hot vpon the tent, with *Flaxe* hurds, *Turpentine*, *Oyle*, and *Waxe* mingled together, and annoynt all the top of the hoofe and cronet with *Bolearmoniake* and *Vinegar*: doe thus once a day till the sore be whole.

CHAP. LX.

To draw out a Stubbe or Thorne.

TAke the hearbe *Detany*, and bruise it in a morter with blacke *Sope*, and lay it to the sore, and it will draw out the Splent, Iron, or Thorne.

CHAP. LXI.

Of the Aubury or Tetter.

THe Aubury is a bloody wart on any part of the horses body, and the Tetter is a cankerous vlcer like

The cure. it: The cure of both is with an hot yron to seare the one plaine to the body, and to scarifie the other; then take the iuyce of *Plantaine*, and mixe it with *Vinegar*, *Honey*, and the powder of *Allome*, and with it annoynt the sore till it be whole.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXII.

Of the Cords, or ſtring-halt.

THis is an vnnaturall binding of the ſinewes; which imperfection a horſe bringeth into the world with him; and therefore it is certaine it is incurable, and not painefull, but onely an eye-ſore, yet the beſt way to keep it from any worſe inconuenience is to bathe his limbes in the decoction of *Coleworts*.

CHAP. LXIII.

Of Spur-galling, or fretting the skinne and haire.

FOr this there is nothing better then *Piſſe* and *Salt*, with which waſh the ſore daily.

CHAP. LXIIII.

Of healing any old ſore or wound.

FReſh *Butter* and the hearbe *Ameos* chopt and beaten together to a ſalue will heale any wound, or any old ſore.

CHAP. LXV.

Of Sinewes being cut.

IF the Horſes Sinewes be cut, take the leaues of wilde *Nepe* or *Woodbine*, and beating them in a morter with May-*Butter*, apply it to the ſore, and it will knit the Sinewes.

CHAP. LXVI.

Of eating away dead fleſh.

TAke *Stubwort*, and lap it in a red Docke leafe, and roſt it in the hot cinders, and lay it to the ſore, and it will eate away any dead fleſh.

CHAP. LXVII.

Of Knots in the Ioynts.

PAtch-greaſe applied as is before ſhewed for ſwellings, will take away any hard knots in the fleſh, or vpon the ſinewes.

CHAP. LXVIII.

Of Venemous wounds, as biting with a mad dog, tuskes of Bores, Serpents, or such like.

FOr any of these mortall or venemous wounds, take *Yarrow*, *Callamint*, and the graines of *Wheate*, and beate them in a morter with water of *Southern-wood*, and make it into a salue, and lay it to the sore, and it will heale it safely.

CHAP. LXIX.

Of Lyce, or Nits.

THis filthines of Vermine is bred in a Horse through vnnaturall dislike and pouertie: the cure is: Take the iuyce of *Beets* and *Staue-saker* beaten together, and with it annoynt the horses body ouer, and it will make him cleane.

The cure.

CHAP. LXX.

Of defending a Horse from flies.

TAke the iuyce of *Pellitory* of *Spaine* and mixing it with milke annoynt the horses belly therewith, and no flyes will trouble him.

CHAP. LXXI.

Of broken bones, or bones out of ioynt.

AFter you haue placed the bones in their true places, take the *Ferne Osmund*, and beat it in a morter with the Oyle of *Swallowes*, and annoynt all the member, then splent it and role it vp, and in fifteene daies, the bones will knit and be strong.

CHAP. LXXII.

Of drying vp sores when they be almost whole.

ALLom burnt, vnslakt *Lime*, the ashes of an old shoe-sole burnt, or Oyster-shels burnt, any of these simply by themselues, will dry vp any sore.

CHAP.

CHAP. LXXIII.

A most famous receit to make a Horse that is leane, and full of inward sickneſſe, ſound and fat in foureteene dayes.

TAke of *Wheate-meale* ſixe pound, *Aniſeeds* two ounces, *Commin-ſeeds* ſixe drammes, *Carthamus*, one dramme and a halfe, *Fennegrick-ſeeds* one ounce two drammes, *Brimſton* one ounce and a halfe, *Sallet oyle* one pint, *Hony* one pound and a halfe, *White-wine* foure pintes; this muſt be made into paſte, the hard ſimples being pounded into powder, and finely ſearſt and then kneaded together, and ſo made into bals as bigge as a mans fiſt, then euery watring conſume one of thoſe bals in his cold water, which he drinketh for morning and euening for fifteene daies together, and if at firſt he be dainty to drinke the water, yet care not, but let him faſt till he drinke it, and after hee begins to take it hee will drinke it with great greedineſſe.

CHAP. LXXIIII.

How to make a white Starre.

SLit the Horſes fore-head the length of your Starre, and then raiſe the skin vp with a cornet, and put in a plate of Leade as bigge as the Starre, and let it remaine ſo two or three dayes; and then let it out and preſſe downe the skinne with your hand, and that haire will fall away, and white will come in the place.

The end of the Horſe.

The generall cure and ordering of the Bull, Cow, Calfe, or Oxe.

Chapter I.

Of the Bull, Cow, Calfe or Oxe, their ſhape, breede, vſe, choyce and preſeruation.

FOR as much as the male of all creatures are the principall in the breede and generation of things, and that the fruit which iſſueth from their ſeede, participateth moſt with their outward ſhapes and inward qualities; I thinke fitteſt in this place, where I intend to treat of Horned-cattell and Neate, to ſpeak firſt of the choyce of a fayre Bull, being the breeders principalleſt inſtrument of profit. You ſhall vnderſtand then, that of our Engliſh cattell (for I will not ſpeake of thoſe in Italie and other forraigne countries, as other Authors doe, and forget mine owne) the beſt are bred in *Yorkſhire*, *Darby-ſhire*, *Lanca-ſhire*, *Stafford-ſhire*, *Lincolneſhire*, *Gloſter-ſhire*, and *Somerſet-ſhire*, though they which are bred in *Yorke-ſhire*, *Darby-ſhire*, *Lanca-ſhire*, and *Stafford-ſhire*, are generally all blacke of colour, and though they whoſe blackneſſe is pureſt, and their haires like Veluet, are eſteemed beſt; they haue exceeding large hornes, and very white, with blacke tippes; they are of ſtately ſhape, bigge, round, and well buckled together in euery member, ſhort ioynted, and moſt comely to the eye, ſo that they are eſteemed excellent in the market: thoſe in *Lincolne-ſhire* are the moſt part pide with more white, then the other colours; their hornes little and crooked; of bodies exceeding tall, long and large, leane, and thin thighed, ſtrong hooued, not apt to ſurbaite, and

The countries for breed.

are

are indeed fitteſt for labour and draught. Thoſe in *Somerſet-ſhire* and *Glocester-ſhire* are generally of a bloud-red colour, in all ſhapes like vnto thoſe in *Lincolne-ſhire*, and fitteſt for their vſes. Now to mixe a race of theſe and the blacke ones together is not good, for their ſhapes and colours are ſo contrary that their iſſue are very vncomely: therefore I would with all men to make their breeds either ſimply from one and the ſame kinde, or elſe to mixe *York-ſhire* with *Stafford-ſhire* with *Lancaſter-ſhire*, or *Darby-ſhire* with one of the blacke races, and ſo likewiſe *Lincolne-ſhire* with *Somerſet ſhire*, or *Somerſet-ſhire* with *Glocester-ſhire*.

Of not mixing, and mixing of races.

Now for the ſhape of your Bull; he would be of a ſharpe and quicke countenance, his hornes the larger the better, his necke fleſhie, his belly long and large, his forehead broad and curled, his eyes blacke and large, his eares rough within, and haire like velvet, his muzell large and broad at the vpper lip, but narrow and ſmall at the neather, his noſthrill crooked within, yet wide and open, his dew-lap extending from his neather lip downe to his fore-boothes, large, ſide, thinne, and hairy; his breaſt rough and bigge, his ſhoulders large, broad and deepe, his ribs broad and wide, his backe ſtraight and flat, euen to the ſetting on of his tayle, which would ſtand high, his huckle-bones round and faire appearing, making his buttocks ſquare, his thighs round, his legs ſtraight and ſhort ioynted; his knees round and big, his hoofes or clawes long and hollow, his tayle long and bulh-haired, and his pyzell round, and alſo well haired.

The ſhape of the Bull.

Theſe Buls as they are for breed, ſo they are excellently good for the draught, onely they naturally draw better ſingle, like horſes, then in the yoake, like Oxen: the reaſon as I ſuppoſe being, becauſe they can hardly be match't in an equall manner.

The vſe of the Bull.

Now

Of the Cow & her shape.

Now for the Cow, you shall chuse her of the same Country with your Bull, and as neare as may be of one colour, onely her bagge or vdder would euer be white, with foure teats and no more, her belly would be round and large, her forehead broad and smooth, and all her other parts such as are before shewed in the male kinde.

Of her vse.

The vse of the Cow is twofold, either for the Darie, or for breed: The red Cow giueth the best milke, and the blacke Cow bringeth forth the goodliest Calfe. The young Cow is the best for breed, yet the indifferent old are not to be refused. That Cow which giueth milke longest are best for both purposes, for she which goes long drie looseth halfe her profit, and is lesse fit for teeming: for commonly they are subiect to feede, and that straineth the wombe or matrix.

Of Calues, and their nourishing.

Now for Calues: there are two wayes of breeding them: the one, to let them runne with their Dams all the yeere, which is best, and maketh the goodliest beast: the other, to take them from their Dams, after their first sucking, and so bring them vp on the finger, with flotten Milke, the colde onely being taken away and no more; for to giue a young Calfe hot Milke is present death, or very dangerous. If your Calfe be calued in the fiue dayes after the change, which is called the *Prime*, doe not reare it, for most assuredly it will haue the Sturdy, therefore preserue it onely for the Butcher; also, when you haue preserued those male Calues, which shal be Buls, then geld the rest for Oxen, and the yonger they are guelt the better. The best time for rearing of Calues, is from *Michaelmas* till *Candlemas*. A Calfe would be nourished with Milke twelue weekes, onely a fortnight before you weane it from Milke, let the Milke be mixt with water. After your Calfe hath drunke Milke one moneth: you shall take the finest, sweetest, and softest

Obseruations.

Hay

Hay you can get, and putting little wispes into clouen sticks, place them so as the Calfe may come to them and learne to eate Hay. After our *Ladies* day, when the weather is faire, you may turne your Calues to grasse, but by no meanes let it be ranke, but short and sweet, so that they may get it with some labour.

Now of the Oxe. You shall vnderstand that the largest are the best and most profitable, both for draught or feeding: for he is the strongest to indure labour, and best able to containe both flesh and tallow. Now for his shape, it differeth nothing from that of the Bull, onely his face would be smooth, and his belly deeper. That Oxe is fittest for the yoake, which is of gentlest nature, and most familiar with the man. In matching your Oxen for the yoake, let them as neare as may be, be of one height, spirit and strength, for the stronger will euer wrong the weaker, and the duller will iniure him that is of free spirit, except the driuer be carefull to keepe the dull Oxe to his labour. Oxen for the yoake, would by no meanes be put beyond their ordinary pace: for violence in trauell heates them, heat breeds surfet, and surfet those diseases which makes them vnapt to feed, or for any other vse of goodnesse. Your Oxe for the yoake will labour well with Barly-straw, or Pease-straw, and for blend fodder, which is Hay and straw mixed together, he will desire no better feeding.

Of the Oxe, and his vse.

Of his food for labour.

Now for your Oxe to feede, he would as much as might be, be euer of lusty and yong yeeres, or if old, yet healthfull and vnbruised, which you shall know by a good taile, and a good pyzell, for if the haire of one or both be lost, then he is a waster and will be long in feeding. If you doe see the Oxe doth licke himselfe all ouer, it is a good signe that he is market-able and will feede, for it showes soundnesse, and that the beast taketh a ioy

Oxen to feed for the Butcher.

in himselfe: yet whilst he doth so lick himselfe he feedeth not, for his owne pride hindereth him, and therefore the husband-man will lay the Oxes owne dung vpon his hide, which will make him leaue licking and fall to his foode. Now if you goe to chuse a fat beast, you shall handle his hindmost ribbe, and if it be soft and loose, like Downe, then it shewes the Oxe is outwardly well fed; so doth soft huckell bones, and a bigge nach, round and knotty: if his cod be big and full, it shewes he is well tallowed, and so doth the fat croppe behinde the shoulders: If it be a Cow, then handle her nauell, and if that be big, round and soft, surely she is well tallowed. Many other obseruations there are, but they be so well knowne, and common in euery mans vse, that they neede no curious demonstration.

To preserue Cattell in health.

Now for the preseruation of these Cattell in good and perfect health. It shall be meete that for the yong and lusty, and indeede generally for all sorts, except Calues, to let them blood twice in the yeere, namely, the Spring and fall, the Moone being in any of the lower Signes, and also to giue them to drinke of the pickle of *Olives* mixed with a head of *Garlicke* bruised therein. And for your Calues, be onely carefull that they goe not too soone to Grasse, and small danger is to be feared. Now notwithstanding all a mans carefulnesse, beasts daily doe get infirmities, and often fall into mortall extremities, perwse therefore these Chapters following, and you shall finde cure for euery particular disease.

CHAP. II.

Of the Feauer in Cattell.

CAttell are most subiect vnto a Feauer, and it commeth either from surfet of foode, being raw, and musty, or from fluxe of cold humors ingendred by cold keeping. The signes are trembling, heauy eies, a foaming mouth,

mouth, and much groaning: and the cure is; first, you shall let him blood, and then giue him to drinke a quart of Ale, in which is boild three or foure rootes of *Plantaine*, and two spoonefuls of the best *Treakle*, and let his Hay be sprinkled with water. The cure.

CHAP. III.

Of any inward sickneſſe in Cattell.

FOr any inward sickneſſe or drooping in Cattell, take a quart of strong Ale, and boile it with a handfull of *Wormewood*, and halfe a handfull of *Rewe*; then strain it, and adde to it two spoonefuls of the iuyce of *Garlicke*, and as much of the iuyce of *Houſeleeke*, and as much *Treakle*, and giue it the beast to drinke, being no more but luke-warme.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the diſeaſes in the head, as the Sturdy, or turning-euill.

THis disease of the Sturdy is knowne by a continuall turning about of the Beast in one place; and the cure is, to cast the Beast, and hauing made his feete fast, to slit the vpper part of his forehead crosse-wise, about foure inches each way, then turning vp the skin and laying the skull bare, cut a peece out of the skull two inches square or more: then looke and next vnto the panicle of the braine you shall see a bladder lye full of water and blood, which you shall very gently take out, and throw away; then annoynt the place with warme fresh *Butter*, turne downe the skin, and with a Needle and a little red Silke stitch it close together, then lay on a hot plaster of *Oyle*, *Turpentine*, *Waxe*, and a little *Rozen* melted together with *Flaxe-hurds*, and so folding warme woollen cloathes about her head; let the Beast rise and so remaine three or foure daies ere your dresse it againe, and then heale it vp like another wound, onely obserue in this cure by no meanes you touch the braine, for that The cure.

is mortall, and then the helpe is both common and most ealie.

CHAP. V.

Of diseases in the eyes of Cattell, as the Hawe, a Stroake, inflamation, weeping, or the Pinne or webbe.

FOr any generall soreneſſe in the eyes of Cattell, take the water of *Eye-bright*, mixt with the iuyce of *Houſe-leeke*, and waſh them therewith, and it will recouer them: but if a *Hawe* breede therein, then you ſhall cut it out, which euery ſimple Smith can doe. But for a *ſtroake, inflamation, Pinne or web*, which breeds excreſſions vpon the eyes; take a new laid *Egge*, and put out halfe the white; then fill it vp with Salt, and a little Ginger, and roſte it extreame hard in hot ſinders; which done, beate it to powder ſhell and all, but before you roſte it wrap it in a wet cloth, and put of this powder into the beaſts eye, and it will cure it.

CHAP. VI.

Of diſeaſes in the mouth, as Barbs vnder the tongue, Blaine on the tongue, teeth looſe, or tongue venomed.

THeſe Barbs or Paps which grow vnder the tongues of Cattell, and being inflamed doe hinder them from feeding, you ſhall with a keene paire of Sheares cut away cloſe by the fleſh, and if they bleed much (as they will doe if they be rancke) you ſhall then with a red hot Bodkin ſeare them, and droppe on the top of the ſeared places a drop or two of *Roſen* and *Butter* mixt together; but if they bleed not, then onely rub them with *Sage* and *Salt*, and they will heale. Now for the blaine on the tongue, of ſome called the tin blaine, it is a bliſter which groweth at the rootes of the tongue, and commeth through heat of the ſtomacke and much chafing, and is oft very mortall, for it will riſe ſo ſuddenly and ſo big that it will ſtop the winde of the Beaſt. The cure is,

The cure.

to

thrust your hand into the mouth of the Beast, and drawing out his tongue, with your naile to breake the blister, and then to wash the sore place with strong *Brine*, or *Sage*, *Salt* and *Water*: if you finde moe blisters then one, breake them all, and wash them, and it is a present cure. Now for loose teeth, you shall let the beast blood in his gummes, and vnder his taile; then wash his chaps with *Sage* and *Woodbine* leaues, boild in Brine: Lastly, if the tongue be venomed, which you shall know by the vnnaturall swelling thereof: you shall take *Plantaine* and boiling it with *Vineger* and *Salt*, wash the tongue therewith, and it will cure it.

CHAP. VII.

Of diseases in the necke, as being galled, bruysed, swolne, out of ioynt, or having the closhe.

IF an Oxes necke be galled, bruysed, or swollen with the yoake, take the leaues of round *Aristolochia*, and beating them in a Morter, with Tallow, or fresh Grease, annoint the sore place therewith, and it will not onely heale it, but any straine in the Necke, euen if the bone be a little disordered. Now for the Closhe or Clowse, which causeth a beast to pill and loose the haire from his necke, and is bred by drawing in wet and rainie weather: you shall take the ashes of an old burnt Shoe, and strow it vpon the Necke, and then rub it ouer with *Tallow* and *Turpentine* mixt together.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Pestilence, Gargyll, or Murraine in Beasts.

THis Pestilence or Murraine amongst Beasts is bred by diuers occasions; as from ranckenesse of blood, or feeding; from corruption of the ayre, intemperateneſſe of the weather, inundation of floods, or the infection of other Cattell: much might be said of the violence and mortalitie thereof, which hath vtterly vnfur-

niſhed whole Countries: but to goe to the cure; you ſhall giue to all your Cattell, as well the ſound as ſicke, this medicine, which neuer failed to preſerue as many as haue taken it: take of old ſtrong *Vrine* a quart, and mixe it with more then halfe a handfull of Hens dung, well diſſolued therein, and giue it your beaſt to drinke.

The cure.

CHAP. IX.

Of the miſliking, or leanneſſe of Beaſts.

IF your Beaſt fall into any vnnaturall miſlike or leanneſſe, which you ſhall know by the diſflowring of his hayre; you ſhall then cauſe him firſt to be let blood, and after take ſweet Butter and beat it in a Morter, with a little *Mirrhe*, and the ſhauing of *Iuory*, and being kept faſting, make him ſwallow downe two or three Bals thereof; and if it be in the winter, feede him with ſweet Hay, if in the Sommer, put him to graſſe.

CHAP. X.

Of the diſeaſes in the guts, as Fluxe, Coſtiueneſſe, Chollicke, and ſuch like.

IF your Beaſt be troubled with any ſore Laxe, or bloody-fluxe, you ſhall take a handful of the ſeeds of *Wood-roſe*, and being dried, and beaten to powder, brew it with a quart of ſtrong Ale, and giue it the Beaſt to drinke. But if hee be too drie or coſtiue in his body, then you ſhall take a handfull of *Fennygreeke*, and boyle it in a quart of Ale, and giue it him to drinke; but for any chollicke or belly ake, or gnawing of the guts, boyle in the water which hee drinketh good ſtore of Oyle, and it will helpe him.

CHAP. XI.

Of piſsing of blood.

IF your Beaſt piſſe blood, which commeth either of ouer-labouring, or of hard and ſower feeding, you ſhall take *Shepheards purſe*, and boyle it in a quart of red

Wine

Wine, and then straine it, and put to it a little *Synamon*, and so giue it the Beast to drinke.

CHAP. XII.

Of dropping Nostrils, or any cold in the Head.

IF your Beasts nostrils runne continually, which is a signe of cold in the head; you shall take *Butter* and *Brimstone*, and mixing them together, annoint two long Goose-feathers therewith, and thrust them vp into the nostrils of the Beast, and vse thus to doe euery morning till they leaue dropping.

CHAP. XIII.

Of any swelling in a Beast whatsoeuer.

IF your Beast haue any outward swelling, bathe it with *Oyle* and *Vinegar* exceeding hot, and it will assuage it; but if the swelling be inward, then boile round *Aristolochia* in his water.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of the worme in the taile.

THere is a worme which will breede in the taile of a beast, and doth not onely keepe him from feeding, but also eateth away the haire of the taile, and disfigureth the beast. The cure is, to wash the taile in strong lye made of *Vrine* and *Asb-wood ashes*, and that will kill the worme, and also heale and drie vp the soare. The cure.

CHAP. XV.

Of any Cough or shortnesse of breath in Cattell.

IF your beast be troubled with the Cough or shortnes of breath, you shall giue him to drink diuers Mornings together a spoonfull or two of *Tarre* dissolued in a quart of new *Milke*, and a head of *Garlike* cleane pild & bruised.

CHAP. XVI.

Of any impostume, bile or botch on a beast.

IF your beast be troubled with any impostume, bile or botch, you shall take *Lilly* rootes, and boyle them in

Milke

Milke till they be ſoft, ſo that you may make them like pap, then being very hot clap it to the ſore, and then when it comes to be ſoft open it with a hot Iron, and let out the filth, then heale it vp with *Tarre*, *Turpentine*, and *Oyle* mixt together.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of diſeaſes in the ſinewes, as weakeneſſe, ſtifneſſe, or ſorenes.

IF you finde by the vnnimble going of your beaſt, that his ſinewes are weake, ſhrunke or render: Take *Mallowes* and *Cheekweed*, and boyle them in the dregs of *Ale* or in *Vinegar*, and being very hot lay it to the offended member, and it will comfort the ſinewes.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the generall ſcab, particular ſcab, Itch, or ſcurfe in Cattell.

IF your beaſt be troubled with ſome few ſcabs here and there on his body, you ſhall onely rub them off, and annoynt the place with blacke *Sope* and *Tarre* mixt together, and it will heale them. But if the ſcab be vniuerſall ouer the body, and the ſcab mixt with a drie ſcurfe; then you ſhall firſt let the beaſt blood, after rub off the ſcabs and ſcurfe till the skin bleed, then waſh it with old *Vrine* and greene *Coporas* together, and after the bathing is drie, annoint the body with *Bores greaſe* and *Brimſtone* mingled together.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the hide-bound or drie skinne in Cattell.

THis griefe commeth of ouer-much labour and euill keeping, and aboue all other beaſts your *Lincolneſhire* Oxen are ſubiect vnto it, the ſignes are a diſcoloured and hard skinne, with much leanneſſe: The cure is, to let him blood, and to giue him to drinke a quart of ſtrong *Ale* brewed with *Myrrhe* and the powder of *Bay Berries*, or for want of *Berries* the *Bay*-tree leaues, and then keepe him warme and feede him with *Hay* that

The cure.

is a little mow-burnt, and onely looketh red, but is not dustie or mouldy, for that will get him an appetite to drinke, and drinking will loosen his skinne.

CHAP. XX.

Of the diseases in the Lungs, especially the Lung-growne.

THe Lungs of a beast are much subiect to sickenesse, as may appeare by much panting and shortnesse of breath, the signes being a continuall coughing, but that which is before prescribed for the Cough will cure all these, onely for a beast which is Lung-growne, or hath his lungs growne to his side, which commeth through some extreame drought taken in the Summer season, and is knowne by the cough, hoarse or hollow coughing, you shall take a pinte of *Tanners Oze*, and mixe it with a pinte of new *Milke*, and one ounce of browne *Sugercandie*, and giue it the beast to drinke, this hath beene found a present cure.

CHAP. XXI.

Of biting with a mad-dog, or any other venemous beast.

IF your beast be bitten with a mad-dogge, or any other venemous beast, you shall take *Plantaine*, and beat it in a morter with *Bolearmoniak*, *Sanguis draconis*, *Barly* meale, and the whites of *Egges*, and plaster-wise lay it vnto the sore, renewing it once in foureteene houres.

CHAP. XXII.

Of the falling downe of the pallat of a beasts mouth.

LAbour and drought will make the pallat of a beasts mouth to fall downe, which you shall know by a certaine hollow chanking in his mouth, when hee would eate, also by his sighing, and a desire to eate but cannot: The cure is; you shall cast the beast, and with your hand thrust it vp, then let him blood in the pallate, and annoint it with *Hony* and *Salt*; and put him to grasse, for he may eate no drie meate. The cure.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of any griefe or paine in the hoofe of a beast, and of the Foule.

TAke *Mugwort* and beate it in a morter with hard *Tallow*, and apply it to the hoofe of the beast, and it will take away any griefe whatsoeuer. But if he be troubled with that disease which is called the Foule, and commeth most commonly by treading in mans ordure, breedeth a soreneſſe and swelling betweene the cleyes, you shall for the cure, cast the beast, and with a *Hay*-rope rubbe him so hard betweene the same that you make him bleede, then annoynt the place with *Tarre*, *Turpentine*, and *Kitchin* fee, mixt together, and keepe him out of the durt, and he will soone be whole.

The cure.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of Bruisings in generall, on what part of the body soeuer they be.

TAke *Brokelempe* the leſſe, and frie it with *Tallow*, and so hot lay it to the bruise, and it will either expell it, or else ripen it, breake it, and heale it, as hath beene often approued.

CHAP. XXV.

Of swallowing downe Hennes-dung, or any other poysonous thing.

IF your beast haue swallowed down *Hens*-dung, *Horseleeches*, or any other poysonous thing, you shall take a pinte of strong *Vinegar*, and halfe so much *Oyle* or sweete *Butter*, and two spoonefuls of *Treacle*, and mixing them together on the fire, giue it the beast warme to drinke, and it will cure him.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of killing Lice or Ticks.

BEasts that are bred in woods vnder droppings of trees, or in barraine and vnwholesome places are much subiect to Lice, Ticks, and other vermine. The

cure

cure whereof is to annoint their body with freſh *Greaſe*, *Pepper*, *Staueſaker*, and *Quickſiluer* beaten together till the *Quickſiluer* be ſlaine. The cure.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the Dewbolne, or generall Gargill.

HOwſoeuer ſome of our Engliſh writers are opinioned, this Dewbolne or generall Gargill is a poyſonous and violent ſwelling, beginning at the neither part of the Dewlap, and if it be not preuented the ſwelling will aſcend vpward to the throat of the beaſt, and then it is incurable; therefore for the preſeruation of your beaſt, as ſoone as you ſee the ſwelling appeare, caſt the beaſt, and ſlit the ſwel'd place of the Dewlap at leaſt foure inches in length: then take a handfull of *Speare-graſſe* or *Knot-graſſe*, and thruſting it into the wound, ſtitch it vp cloſe, then annoynt it with *Butter* and *Salt*, and ſo let it rot and weare away of it ſelfe: if you perceiue that his body be ſwel'd, which is a ſigne that the poyſon is diſperſt inwardly, then it ſhall be good to giue him a quart of *Ale* and *Rew* boyled together, and to chafe him vp and downe well, both before and after.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the laſſe of the Cud.

A Beaſt will many times through careleſnes in chawing, looſe his Cudde, and then mourne and leaue to eate: The cure whereof is, to take a little ſower *Leauen* and *Salt*, and beating it in a morter with mans *Vrine* and *Lome*, make a pritty bigge ball, and force him to ſwallow it downe, and it will recouer his Cudde. The cure.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of killing of all ſorts of wormes, either in Oxe, Cow, or Calfe.

THere is nothing killeth wormes in the bodies of cattell ſooner then *Sauen* chopt ſmall and beaten with ſweete *Butter*, and ſo giuen in round bals to the beaſt,

nor any thing maketh them voyde them ſo ſoone as ſweet *Wort* and a little *Sope* mixt together and giuen the beaſt to drinke.

CHAP. XXX.

Of the vomiting of bloud.

THis diſeaſe commeth through rankneſſe of bloud, got in fruitfull paſtures after hard keeping; inſomuch that you ſhall ſee the blood flow from their mouthes. The cure is, firſt to let the beaſt blood, and then giue to drinke *Bolearmoniacke* & *Ale* mixt together. The cure.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the Gout in Cattell.

IF your beaſt be troubled with the Gout, which you ſhall know by the ſodaine ſwelling of his ioynts and falling againe, you ſhall take *Galingall*, and boyle it in the dregs of *Ale* and ſweet *Butter*, and pultis-wiſe lay it to the offended member.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of milting of a beaſt.

MIlting, is when a beaſt will oft fall, and oft riſe as he is at his labour, & cannot indure to ſtand any while together: it proceedeth from ſome ſtroake or bruiſe either by cudgell or other blunt weapon: And the cure is, not to raiſe him ſodainly, but to giue him *Ale* and ſome *Pitch* mixt together to drinke. The cure.

CHAP XXXIII.

Of prouoking a beaſt to piſſe.

IF your beaſt cannot piſſe, ſteepe *Smallage* in *Ale* a quart, and giue it him to drinke, and it preſently helpeth.

CHAP. XXXIIII.

Of the ouerflowing of the Gall in beaſts.

THe ouerflowing of the Gall is euer knowne by the yellowneſſe of the skinne and the eyes of the beaſt:

And

And the cure is, to giue him a quart of *Milke*, *Saffron*, and *Turmericke* mixt together to drinke after he hath beene let bloud, and so doe three mornings together. The cure.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of a beast that is goared either with stake, or the horne of another beast.

TAke *Turpentine* and *Oyle*, and heate them on the coales, and then taint the wound therewith, and it will heale it.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of a Cow that is whetherd.

THis disease is when a Cow after her calning cannot cast her cleaning, and therefore to compell her to cast it, you shall take the iuyce of *Bettony*, *Mugwort*, and *Mallowes*, of each three spoonefuls, and mixe it with a quart of *Ale*, and giue it the beast to drinke: and also giue her to eate scorched *Barly*, aud it will force her to auoid her burthen sodainly.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of drawing out thornes or Stubbes.

TAke blacke *Snayles* and blacke *Sope*, and beat them to a salue, and apply them to the sore, and it will draw the griefe to be apparant.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of purging of Cattell.

THere is nothing doth purge a beast so naturally, as the green weedy grasse which groweth in Orchards vnder trees; nor any medicine doth purge them better then *Tarre*, *Butter*, and *Sugarcandy* mixt together, and giuen in bals as big as an Hennes Egge.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of being shrew runne, or shrew bitten.

A Shrew Mouse, which is a Mouse with short vneuen legges, and a long head, like a swines, is a venemous

mous thing, and if it bite a beast, the sore will swell, and rankle, and put the beast in danger; but if it onely run ouer a beast it feebleth his hinder parts, and maketh him vnable to goe: the cure then for being shrew bitten, is the same which is formerly shewed for the biting of other venemous beasts: but if he be shrew runne, you shall onely draw him vnder, or beate him with a Bramble which groweth at both ends in the Furrowes of Corne lands.

The cure.

CHAP. XL.

Of faintnesse in labour.

IF your beast in his labour, and heate of the day, chance to faint, you shall loose him, and driue him to the running streame to drinke, and then giue him two or three *Ospines* full of partcht *Barley* to eate, and he will labour fresh againe.

CHAP. XLI.

Of breeding Milke in a Cow.

IF your Cow after her caluing cannot let downe her Milke, you shall giue her a quart of strong posset Ale, mixt with *Annis-seedes*, and *Coliander-seedes*, beaten to powder, to drinke euery morning, and it will not onely make her Milke spring, but also increase it wonderfully.

CHAP. XLII.

Of bones out of ioynt, or bones broken.

IF any beast haue a bone broken, or misplaced, after you haue set it right, and in his true place; you shall wrappe a plaister about it, made of *Burgundy Pitch*, *Tallow*, and *Linseede-oyle*, and then splint it, and let it remaine vnbound fifteene daies.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of the rot in beasts.

IF your beast be subiect to rottennesse, which you may know by his leannesse, mislike, and continuall scou-

ring

ring behinde: you ſhall take *Bay-berries*, beaten to powder, *Myrrhe*, *Iuye leaues*, *Elder leaues*, and *Feather-fewe*, a good lumpe of drie *Clay*, and *Bay ſalt*, mixe theſe together in ſtrong *Vrine*, and being warme giue the Beaſt halfe a pinte thereof to drinke, and it will knit and preſerue them.

CHAP. XLIIII.

Of the Pantas.

THe *Pantas* is a very faint diſeaſe; and maketh a beaſt to ſweat, ſhake, and pant much. The cure is, to giue him in *Ale* and *Vrine* mixt together a little *Soote*, and a little earning to drine, two or three mornings before you labour him. The cure.

CHAP. XLV.

Of all manner of wounds in beaſts.

TO cure any wounds in Beaſts giuen by Edge-toole, or otherwiſe, where the skin is broke; take *Hoggeſ-greaſe*, *Tarre*, *Turpentine*, and *Waxe*, of each a like quantitie; and a quarter ſo much *Verdigreaſe*, and melt them all together into one Salue, and apply it to the wound, by ſpreading it vpon a cloath, and it will heale it without any ranke, or dead fleſh.

The end of the Bull, Oxe, Cow, and Calfe.

Of

Of Sheepe.

CHAPTER I.

Of Sheepe in generall, their vſe, choyſe, ſhape, and preſeruation.

TO enter into any long diſcourſe of the praiſe or profit of Sheepe, or to ſhow my reading by relation of the Sheepe of other Countries were friuolous, becauſe I am to write much in a very little Paper; and I ſpeake onely to my Countrymen the Engliſh, who deſire to learne and know their owne profit. Know then, that whoſoeuer will ſtocke himſelfe with good Sheepe, muſt looke into the nature of the Soyle, in which he liueth: for Sheepe according to the Earth and Ayre in which they liue, doe alter their natures and properties: the barraine Sheepe becomming good in good ſoiles, and the good Sheepe barraine in euill ſoiles. If then you deſire to haue Sheepe of a curious fine Staple of Wooll, from whence you may draw a thread as fine as ſilke, you ſhall ſee ſuch in *Hereford-ſhire*, about *Lempſter* ſide, and other ſpeciall parts of that Countrie; in that part of *Worſterſhire*, ioyning vpon *Shropſhire*, and many ſuch like places, yet theſe Sheepe are very little of bone, blacke faced, and beare a very little burthen. The Sheepe vpon *Cotſall* hils are of better bone, ſhape, and burthen, but their Staple is courſer and deeper. The Sheepe in that part of *Worſterſtire*, which ioyneth on *Warwikeſhire*, and many parts of *Warwickſhire*, all *Leiſterſhire*, *Buckinghamſhire*, and part of *Northamptonſhire*; and that part of *Nottinghamſhire* which is exempt from the Forreſt of Sherwood, beareth a large boned Sheepe, of

of the beſt ſhape and deepeſt Staple; chiefely if they be Paſture Seepe; yet is their wooll much courſer then thoſe of *Cotſall*. *Lincolneſhire*, eſpecially in the Salt Marſhes, haue the largeſt Sheepe, but not the beſt Wooll, for their legges and bellies are long and naked, and their Staple is courſer then any other: the Sheepe in *Yorkeſhire* and ſo Northward, are of reaſonable bigge bone, but of a Staple rough and hairy; and the *Welch* Sheepe are of all the worſt, for they are both little and of worſe Staple; and indeed, are praiſed onely in the diſh, for they are the ſweeteſt Mutton.

Of the choice of Sheepe.

If now, knowing the natures and properties of the Sheepe of euery Countrie, you goe about to ſtock your ground, be ſure to bring your Sheepe from a worſer Soyle to a better, and not from a better to a worſe. The Leare, which is the earth on which a Sheepe lyeth, and giueth him his colour, is much to be reſpected: the red Leare is held the beſt, the Duskiſh, inclining to a little redneſſe, is tollerable, but the white or durty Leare ſtarke naught. In the choice therefore of your Sheepe, chuſe the biggeſt boned, with the beſt wooll; the Staple being ſoft, greaſie, well curled, and cloſe together, ſo that a man ſhall haue much a doe to part it with his fingers. Theſe Sheep beſides the bearing of the beſt burthen, are alwaies the beſt butchers ware, and goe ſooneſt away in the Market. Therefore, in the choiſe of Sheepe for your breed, haue a principall reſpect to your Rammes, for they euer mare or make a flocke: let them then, as neere as you can, haue theſe properties or ſhapes. Firſt, large of body in euery generall part, with a long body, and a large belly; his forehead would be broad, round, and well riſing; a cheerefull large eye, ſtraight ſhort noſtrils, and a very ſmall muzell, by no meanes any hornes, for the dodder Sheepe is the beſt breeder, and his iſſue

Of the Leare.

The ſhape of a Sheepe.

neuer dangereth the Damme in yeaning, as the horned Sheep doe: beſides, thoſe Sheepe which haue no hornes are of ſuch ſtrength of head, that they haue oft beene ſeene to kill thoſe Sheepe which haue the largeſt hornes and beſt wrinkled: a Sheepe would haue a large vpright necke, ſomwhat bending like the necke of a Horſe, a very broad backe, round buttockes, a thicke taile, and ſhort ioynted legges, ſmall, cleane, and nimble, his wooll would be thicke, and deepe, couering his belly all ouer; alſo, his face, and euen to his noſtrils, and ſo downwards to his very knees and hinder houghes. And thus, according to the ſhape, properties and ſoyle, from whence you chuſe your Rams chuſe the reſt of your flocke alſo.

When Ewes ſhould bring forth.

The beſt time for your Ewes to bring forth their young ones, is, if they be Paſter-Sheepe, about the latter end of *Aprill*, and ſo vntill the beginning of *Iune*; but if they be Field-ſheepe, then from the beginning of *Ianuary* till the end of *March*, that their Lambs may be ſtrong and able before *May* day, to follow their Dams ouer the rough Fallowe lands, and water furrowes, which weake Lambs are not able to doe; and although to yeane thus early in the winter, when there is no graſſe ſpringing, and the ſharpeneſſe of the weather alſo be dangerous, yet the Huſbandman muſt prouide ſhelter and ſweete fodder, and the Shepheard with great vigilance be ſtirring at all howres to preuent euils, for the reaſons before ſhewed: and though the Ewe at the firſt be ſcant of Milke, yet as the warme weather increaſeth, and the graſſe beginneth to ſpring, ſo will her Milke ſpring alſo.

Ordering of Lambes.

Now for your Lambes: about *Michaelmaſſe* you ſhall ſeparate the male from the female; and hauing choſen out the worthieſt, which you meane to keepe for Rams, put them aſide, and then gueld the reſt, which euery orderly Shepheard can doe ſufficiently; for there is no

danger

danger in gelding young Lambes. The firſt yeere a male Lambe is called a weather-Hogge, and a female Lambe an Ewe-Hogge: the ſecond yeere the male is a weather, and the female a Theafe, and the ſhe may be put to the Ram; but if you let her goe ouer that yeere alſo, then ſhe is a double Theafe, and will both her ſelfe be the goodlier Sheepe, and alſo bring forth the goodlier Lambe; whence it comes, that the beſt Sheepe-maſters make more account of the double Theafe then of any other breeder.

Needful obſeruations.

You ſhall obſerue neuer to ſheare your Lambes till they be full Hogs: you ſhall euer wath three daies before you ſheare: the beſt time of ſhearing is from *Iune* to *Auguſt*, Ewes are euer good breeders from three yeeres old till their mouthes breake. If you would haue your Ewes bring forth Male Lambes, note when the North winde bloweth, and driuing your Flocke againſt the winde: let your Rammes ride as they goe, and this will make the Ewes conceiue Male Lambes: ſo likewiſe, if you would haue female Lambes, put your Rams to the Ewes when the winde bloweth out of the South.

The preſeruation of Sheepe.

Now for the generall preſeruation of Sheepe, feede them as much as you can vpon high grounds, which are dried and fruitfull, the graſſe ſweet, yet ſo ſhort that it muſt be got with much labour: but if you muſt force perforce feed vpon lowe and moyſt grounds, which are infectious, you ſhall not bring your ſheepe from the Fold (for I now ſpeake to the honeſt Engliſh Husbandman) vntill the Sunne be riſen, and that his beames beginne to draw the dew from the Earth; then hauing let them forth, driue them to their place of feede, and there, with your dogge, chaſe them vp and downe till they be weary, and then let them either feed or take their reſt, which they pleaſe: this chaſing, firſt, beateth away mill-

dewes, and all other dewes from the earth, as alſo thoſe webs, kels, and flakes which lying on the earth, and a ſheepe licking them vp, doe breede rottenneſſe: alſo, this chaſing ſtirreth vp that naturall heate in a ſheepe, which drinketh vp, and waſteth the abundance of moyſture, which elſe would turne to rottenneſſe. Beſides, a ſheepe being thus chaſed and wearied, will fall to his foode more deliberately, and not with ſuch greedineſſe as otherwiſe he would, and alſo make choiſe of that meat which is beſt for his health. If a Shepheard once in a moneth, or alwaies when he hath occaſion to handle his Sheepe, rub their mouthes with *bay Salt*, it is an excellent preſeruation againſt all manner of ſickneſſe, and very comfortable for a Sheepe alſo: for, a ſheepe will very well liue, and not abate of his fleſh by rubbing his mouth once a day with *Bay Salt* onely. Now, for as much as, notwithſtanding theſe principles, a Sheepe falleth into many infirmities, hereafter followeth the ſeuerall cures of all manner of diſeaſes.

CHAP. II.

The ſignes to know a ſound Sheepe, and an vnſound Sheepe.

IF a Sheepe be ſound and perfit, his eye will be bright and cheerefull, the white pure without ſpot, and the ſtrings red, his gums alſo will be red, his teeth white and euen, his skin on his brisket will be red, and ſo will each ſide betwixt his body and his ſhoulder where wooll growes not, his skinne in generall will be looſe, his wooll faſt, his breath long, and his feete not hot; but if he be vnſound, then theſe ſignes will haue contrary faces, his eyes will be heauy, pale, and ſpotted, his breaſt and gums white, his teeth yellow and foule, his wooll when it is pulled will eaſily part from his body; and when he is dead open him and you ſhall finde his belly full of water, his fat yellow, his Liuer putrified, and his fleſh moyſt and watriſh.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Of sickneſſe in generall, or the Feauer amongſt Sheepe.

CHange of Paſture is a great cure for ſicke Sheepe, yet if you finde any more particularly troubled then the reſt: Take *Puliall* royall, and ſtamping it, mixe the iuyce with *Water* and *Vinegar* the quantitie of halfe a pinte, and giue it the Sheep with a horne luke warme; and by no meanes let the Sheepe be much chaf't: alſo in theſe ſickneſſes the Shepheard muſt haue a great care to note from whence the diſeaſe groweth, if it proceede from cold, then to driue his Sheepe to ſhelter, if from heat, then to feede them in ſhady and coole places.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the generall Scab or Itch in Sheepe.

THis generall Scab or Itch in Sheepe is of all diſeaſes the moſt common among them, proceeding from raynie and wet weather, which falling vpon their skins, if they happen to be chaft or heated after, they preſently breake forth into the ſcab, which you ſhall know by a white filthy ſcurfe ſticking vpon their skins: and the moſt vſuall medicine for the ſame, which all Shepheards vſe, is to annoint the place with *Tarre* and *Greaſe* mixt together, but if vpon the firſt appearance of the Itch, you ſteepe *Puliall Royall* in water, and waſh the skinne therewith, it will keepe them from running into the ſcabbe.

CHAP. V.

Of killing Maggots in Sheepe

IF a Sheepe be troubled with Maggots, you ſhall take *Gooſe greaſe*, *Tarre* and *Brimſtone*, and mixe them together on the fire, and then annoynt the place therewith, and it will kill the Maggots.

CHAP. VI.

Of the red Water.

THe red water is a poysonous diſeaſe in Sheepe, offending the heart, and is indeede as the peſtilence amongſt other cattell: therefore when you finde any of your ſheepe infected therewith, you ſhall firſt let him bloud in the foote betweene the clawes, and alſo vnder the tayle, and then lay to the ſore places *Rew* or *Wormewood* beaten with bay *Salt*, and it helpeth.

CHAP. VII.

Of Lung-ſicke, or any Cough or Cold.

IF your Sheepe be troubled with any ſickneſſe in his Lungs, which you ſhall know by his coughing and ſhortneſſe of breath, you ſhall take *Tuſſilaginis* and *Lungwort*, and ſtamping them, ſtraine the iuyce into a little *Hony* and *Water*, and giue it the Sheepe to drinke.

CHAP VIII.

Of the worme in the Claw of the Sheepe or any other part.

THis Worme breedeth commonly before, betweene the clawes of the foote: but wherſoeuer it breedeth, it is known by the head, which is like a tuft of haire, and will ſticke forth in a bunch. The cure is to ſlit the foote, and draw out the worme without breaking it: and then annoint the place with *Tarre* and *Tallow* mixt together, for *Tarre* ſimply of it ſelfe will draw too much.

The cure.

CHAP. IX.

Of the wildfire in Sheepe.

THis diſeaſe which is called the wildfire, is a very infectious ſicknes, and will indanger the whole flocke; but howſoeuer incurable it is held, yet it is certaine, that if you take *Cheruile*, and ſtamping it with old *Ale*, make a ſalue thereof, and annoynt the ſore therewith, it will kill the fire, and ſet the Sheepe ſafe: and, though ſome, for this diſeaſe, bury the firſt infected Sheepe aliue, with

his

his heeles vpward, before the sheepe Coat doore, yet this medicine hath beene euer found more effectuall.

CHAP. X.

Of the diseases of the Gall, as Choller, Iaundise, and such like.

THese diseases are knowne by the yellownesse of the Sheepes skinne: And the cure is, to take *Plantaine* and *Lettice*, and stamping them together, mixe their iuice with *Vinegar*, & giue halfe a pinte to a Sheepe to drinke. The cure.

CHAP. XI.

Of the tough fleame, or stoppings in Sheepe.

IF your Sheepe be stopt in the head, breast, or wessand. either with tough fleame or other cold humours, which you shall know by the running of the nostrils, then take the pouder of *Puliall-royall*, and mixing it with clarified *Hony*, dissolue it in warme water the quantity of halfe a pinte, and giue it the Sheepe to drinke, and it will loosen the fleame.

CHAP. XII.

Of broken bones in Sheepe, or bones out of ioynt.

IF your Sheepe chance to breake a legge, or haue any other bone misplaced, you shall after you haue set it straight and right againe: first bathe it with *Oyle* and *Wine*, and then dipping a cloth in molten *Patch-grease*, roule it about, and splint it as occasion shall serue, and so let it remaine nine daies, and then dresse it againe, and at the end of the next nine daies, the sheepe will be able to goe.

CHAP. XIII.

Of any sickenesse in Lambes.

IF your Lambe be sicke, you shall giue it *Mares-milke*, or *Goats-milke*, or the one dammes *Milke* mixt with water to drinke, and keepe it very warme.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of the Sturdy, Turning-euill, or More-found.

THese diseases proceede from ranckenesse of blood, which offendeth the braine and other inward parts.

The cure. The cure then is to let the sheepe bloud in the eie veines, temple veines, and through the nostrils, then to rub the places with young *Nettles* bruised.

CHAP. XV.

Of diseases in the eyes, as the Haw, dimnesse, or any sorenesse.

IF your sheepe haue any imperfection in his eyes, you shall drop the iuyce of *Selandine* into them, and it is a present helpe.

CHAP. XVI.

Of water in a Sheepes belly.

IF a sheepe haue water in his belly betweene the outward flesh and the rimme, then you may safely aduenture to let it forth by making a little hole through the flesh, and putting in a quill, but if it be betweene the rimme and the bagge, then it is incurable; for you may by no meanes cut the rimme asunder: when the water is let forth, you shall stitch vp the hole, and annoynt it with *Tarre* and *Butter* mixt together. This water if it remaine in the body will rot the sheepe.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the tagd or belt Sheepe.

A Sheepe is said to be tagd or belt, when by a contenuall squirt running out of his ordure, he berayeth his taile, in such wise that through the heat of the dung it scaldeth, and breedeth the scabbe therein. The

The cure. cure is, with a paire of sheares to cut away the tags, and to lay the sore bare and raw, and then to throw earth dried vpon it, and after that *Tarre* and *Goose-grease* mixt together.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Poxe in Sheepe.

THe Poxe in ſheepe are ſmall red pimples like purples riſing on the skin, and they are infectious. The cure is, to take *Roſemary* and boyle the leaues in *Vinegar*, and bathe the ſores therewith, and it will heale them: change of paſture is good for this diſeaſe, and you ſhall alſo ſeparate the ſicke from the ſound. The cure.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the wood-euill or Crampe.

THis diſeaſe is a weakenes or ſtraining of the ſinewes, got by colds and ſurfets: it is very mortall, and will run through a whole flocke. The cure is, to take *Cinkfoyle* or *Fiue-leau'd* graſſe, and boyle it in wine, and giue the ſheepe a pinte thereof to drinke, and keepe him warme, and chafe his legges with *Oyle* and *Vinegar*. The cure.

CHAP. XX.

Of making an Ewe to loue her owne Lambe, or any other Ewes Lambe.

IF an Ewe grow vnnaturall, and will not take to her Lambe after ſhe hath yeaned it, you ſhall take a little of the cleane of the Ewe, which is the bed in which the Lambe lay, and force the Ewe to eate it, or at leaſt chew it in her mouth, and ſhe will fall to loue it naturally: but if an Ewe haue caſt her Lambe, and you would haue her take to another Ewes Lambe, you ſhall take the Lambe which is dead, & with it rub and daube the liue Lambe all ouer; and ſo put it to the Ewe, and ſhe will take as naturally to it as if it were her owne.

CHAP. XXI.

Of licking vp poyſon.

IF a ſheepe chance to licke vp any poyſon, you ſhall perceiue it by a ſodaine ſwelling and reeling of the ſheepe. And the cure is, as ſoone as you ſee it ſtagger, to The cure.

open the mouth, and you ſhall finde one or moe blifters vpon the tongue rootes, you ſhall preſently breake them with your fingers, and rubbe them with *Earth* or *Sage*, and then piſſe into the ſheepes mouth, and it will doe well.

CHAP. XXII.

Of Lambes yeaned ſicke.

IF a Lambe be yeaned ſicke and weake, the Shepheard ſhall fold it vp in his Cloake, blow into the mouth of it, and then drawing the dams dugs ſquirt *Milke* into the mouth of it.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of making an Ewe to be eaſily deliuered.

IF an Ewe can hardly bring forth or yeane her Lambe, you ſhall take *Balſaminte* or *Horſe-mint*, and put either the iuyce or powder of it into a little ſtrong Ale, and giue it the Ewe to drinke, and ſhe will yeane preſently.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of teeth looſe.

IF a Sheepes teeth be looſe, let him blood in his gums, and vnder his taile, and then rub his teeth with *Earth*, *Salt* and *Sage*.

CHAP. XXV.

Of increaſing Milke in Ewes.

NOthing increaſeth Milke in Ewes more then change of Paſture and feeding: driuing them one while to the Hils, another while to the Valleyes: and where the Graſſe is ſweeteſt, and the Sheepe eateth with beſt appetite, there ſee you continue longeſt: for touching giuing them *Fitches*, *Dill*, *Annis ſeedes*, and ſuch like, this change of ground will make milke ſpring much better,

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Staggers, or leafe ſickneſſe in Lambs, or elder Sheepe.

THe Staggers is ingendred in Sheepe by ſurfetting on Oake leaues, Hathorne leaues, or ſuch like, which Lambes are very apt vnto: it is a colde corrupt blood, or fleame, gathered together about the braine: and indeede is ſuddenly mortall. The beſt cure is, to take *Aſafettida*, and diſſolue it in warme water, and put the quantitie of halfe a ſpoonefull into each eare of the Sheepe or Lambe, and it is a preſent remedy. The cure.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of wormes in the guts of Sheepe or Lambes.

SHeepe are as ſubiect to wormes in their guts and ſtomackes as any other cattell whatſoeuer, which you ſhall know by beating their bellies with their feete, and by looking continually at their bellies. The cure is, to take the leaues of *Coliander*, and to ſtampe them, and then mixing the iuyce thereof with Hony, to giue it the Sheepe to drinke, and then chaſe him a little, and keepe him two or three houres faſting. The cure.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the loſſe of the Cudde.

THat which helpeth the loſſe of the Cudde in Oxe or Cow, the ſame is a preſent remedy for ſheepe, and is ſpoke of before in a former Chapter.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of ſauing Sheepe from the rot.

THis diſeaſe of rottenneſſe is the cruelleſt of all other amongſt Sheepe, and extendeth his violence ouer all the flocke; nay, ouer Townehips and Countries: and though it be held of moſt men incurable, yet good gouernment, and this receit I ſhall deliuer you, will not onely preuent it, but preſerue your Sheepe ſafe: therefore, as ſoone as you perceiue that any of your

Sheepe are tainted, you ſhall take *Adraces*; which is a certaine ſalt, gathered from the ſalt Marches, in the heat of Sommer, when the tide is going away, and leauing certaine drops of ſalt water on the graſſe, then the violent heat of the Sunne turnes it to ſalt: and to ſpeake briefely, all ſalt made by the violence of the Sunnes heat onely, is taken for *Adraces*, of which there is infinite ſtore in *Spaine*. With this *Adraces* rub the mouthes of all your Sheepe once a weeke, and you ſhall neuer neede to feare the rotting of them, for it hath beene well tried; and, as I imagine, the experiment was found out from this ground. It is a rule, and well knowne at this day in *Lincolneſhire*, and in *Kent*, that vpon the ſalt Marſhes ſheepe did neuer die of the rot; no other reaſon being knowne therefore, but the licking vp of that ſalt, and without doubt, it is moſt infallible and moſt eaſie.

CHAP. XXX.

A few precepts for the Shepheard.

IT is meete that euery good and carefull Shepheard know what food is good for Sheepe, what hurtfull; that following the one, and eſchewing the other, he may euer keepe his Cattell in health. The graſſe that is moſt wholeſome for ſheepe, is that which hath growing in it good ſtore of *Mellilot*, *Clauer*, *ſelfe-heale*, *Cynckefoile*, *Brome Pympernell*, and white *Henband*.

The graſſe which is vnwholeſome for Sheepe, is that which hath growing amongſt it, *Spearewort*, *Pennywort*, or *Penny-graſſe*, and any weede which grow from inundations or ouerflowes of water; likewiſe, Knot-graſſe is not good, nor Mildewd graſſe. Of all rots the hungar-rot is the worſt, for it both putrifieth the fleſh and skin, and this is moſt incident to field-Sheepe, for to Paſture Sheepe it neuer hapneth. The next rot to it, is the Pelt-rot, which commeth by great ſtore of raine, immediately after

after a Sheepe is new ſhorne, which mildewing the skinne, corrupteth the body; and this alſo is moſt incident to field-ſheepe, which want ſhelter.

There be little white Snailes which a Sheepe will licke vp, and they will ſoone rot him.

There will grow vpon an Ewes teats little drie ſcabs, which will ſtop their Milke; when the Lambes ſucke, the Shepheard muſt haue care to pull them away.

A Sheepe will haue a bladder of water vnder his chin ſometimes, which the Shepheard muſt be carefull to let out and lance, or the Sheepe will not proſper.

It is good not to ſheare Sheepe before Midſommer, for the more he ſweateth in his wooll the better and more kindly it is.

If you will know the age of your Sheepe, looke in his mouth, and when he is one ſheare he will haue two broad teeth afore; when he is two ſheare, he will haue foure broad teeth afore; when he is three, he will haue ſixe, and when he is foure ſheare, he will haue eight; and after thoſe yeeres his mouth will begin to breake: for, touching that rule of the euenneſſe and vneuenneſſe of the mouth, it is vncertaine, and faileth vpon many occaſions.

The end of the Sheepe.

Of Goates.

CHAPTER I.

Of Goates, and of their Nature.

Eeing Goates are not of any generall vſe in our Kingdome, but onely nouriſhed in ſome wilde and barraine places, where Cattell of better profit can hardly be maintained, as in the mountainous parts of *Wales*, in the barraineſt parts of *Cornewall* and *Deuonſhire*, on *Malborne* hils, and ſome few about the *Peake*: I will not ſtand vpon any large diſcourſe, but as briefely as I can giue you their natures and cures. You ſhall then know, that the Goate is a beaſt of a hot, ſtrong, and luſty conſtitution; eſpecially in the act of generation, that they exceede all other Cattell: they delight to liue in Mountaines that be high, craggie, and full of Buſhes, Bryers, and other wood; they will feede in any plaine paſtures, but their ſpeciall delight is in brouſing vpon trees, they are ſo nimble of foote, that they will goe in places of greateſt danger. The profit which commeth from them, is their Milke, which is an excellent reſtoratiue, and their Kids which are an excellent Veniſon.

The nature of Goates.

His ſhape.

For the ſhape of the Goate: he would haue a large body, and well hayred, great legges, vpright ioynts, not bending, a necke plaine and ſhort, a head ſmall and ſlender, large hornes, and bending, a bigge eye, and a long beard, and his colour white, blacke, or pide. Some doe vſe to ſheare them, to make rough mantles of; but it is not ſo with vs in *England*. The ſhee Goate would haue large teates, and bigge vdder, hanging eares, and

no

no hornes, as they haue in many places.

These Goates would be kept in small flockes, or heards, as not aboue a hundred in a heard: as they must in the heate of sommer haue much shade, so in the winter likewise much shelter, for they can neither endure extreametie of heate nor cold; especially, the violence of winter, for that will make the shee Goate cast her Kid, or bring it forth vntimely. These loue Mast well, but yet you must giue them other foode to mixe with it. The best time to let the male and female goe together, is about the beginning of *December*. If you house Goates in the winter, let them haue no litter to lye on, but the floore paued, or grauelled, for otherwise, their owne heate will annoy them: they must also be kept very cleanely, for they can endure no filthy sauours. For the young Kids, you shall in all points order them as you doe your Lambes. Now, for their preseruation; if they be suffered to goe and chuse their owne foode, they are to themselues so good phisitions, that they will seldome or neuer be troubled with any inward sickneſſe; onely the vnnaturall exceſſe of their lust maketh them grow soone old, and so both past vse and profit. For those particular diseases which accidentally fall vpon them: here followeth the cures. The ordering of Goates.

CHAP. II.

Of the pestilence in Goates, or any inward and hidden sickenesse.

IF you perceiue your Goates to droope, or looke with sullen or sad countenances, it is an assured signe of sickneſſe; but if they foame or lather at the mouth, then it is a signe of the Pestilence. The cure is, first, to seperate them from the sound, then to let them blood, and giue them the Buds and Leaues of *Celodine*, with rushes and reeds to eate, and it is a present remedy. The cure.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Of the dropsie in Goates.

GOates are very much subiect vnto the Dropsie, through their excesse drinking of water; the signe whereof is a great inflamation and heate in the skin: the cure is, to seeth *Wormewood* in Water and Salt, and giue a pinte thereof to the Goate to drinke diuers mornings, for to slit and let out the water vnder the shoulder is not so certaine and safe a cure.

The cure.

CHAP. IIII.

Of stopping the teats.

THere will ingender in the teats of Goates a certaine tough hard fleame which will stop the Milke from issuing; which to cure, you shall with your finger and your thumbe pull it away, and then annoynt the place with *Hony*, and the *Goates Milke* mixt together.

The cure.

CHAP. V.

Of Goates that cannot Kidde.

GOates, aboue other Cattell, are troubled with hardnesse in Kidding, by reason that if they be chafed or hunted, their Kids will turne in their bellies: the remedy then to preserue them from that danger, is to keep them quiet & vntroubled vntill they haue Kidded.

CHAP. VI

Of the Tetter, or drie scabbe in Goates.

TO heale any Tetter, or drie scabbe in Goates, take *blacke-Sope*, *Tarre*, *Hogges grease*, and *Brimstone*, mixe them well together, and annoint the sores therewith, and it will heale them.

CHAP. VII.

Of guelding Kiddes in the Sommer season.

KIds being guelt in the Sommer season, as those which are late Kidded must necessarily be; the Flie will be so busie with the soare, that with their blowings they

will

will breede ſuch ſtore of Maggots in the wound, that it will indanger their liues: to defend them then from ſuch annoyance of the Flie, you ſhall take *Soote*, *Tarre*, and thicke *Creame*, and mixe them well together, and annoynt the wound therewith, and it will both heale it, and keepe the flie away.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Itch in Goats.

IF your Goates be troubled with an Itch, ſo that they cannot feede for clawing and biting themſelues, you ſhall waſh their skinnes with old *Chamber-lye*, and greene *Coporas* well boylde together, and it will kill the Itch.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Tuell ſtopping in Goats.

GOates when they are ſucking on their dammes, or when they are new kidded, will commonly haue a great laxe or ſquirt, ſo that the ordure which commeth from them, if it be not well cleanſed and taken from them, it will with their owne naturall heate ſo bake and drie, that it will ſtoppe vp their Tuels, ſo that they cannot dung, which if it be not holpen the Kidde will die. The cure is, to cleanſe the place, and open the Tuell, and then put into it an inch or there about of a ſmall *Candles* end dipt in *Hony*, and then annoynt all the Tuell ouer with *Capons* greaſe. The cure.

CHAP. X.

Of the Staggers or Reeling euill in Goats.

IF your Goats be troubled with the Staggers or Reeling euill, which is a diſeaſe bred in them by the violent heate of the Sunne, you ſhall take *Bay Salt* and *Verdiuyce*, and mixe them together, and giue the Goate halfe a pinte thereof to drinke; or elſe take *Houſe-leeke*, and *Dragons*, of each a like, ſome grounds

of *Ale*, with a little new *Milke*, ſtampe the hearbs, and then mingle them together, then put thereto a fewe *Geues* groſſely beaten, and then boyle it againe, then coole it, and giue the ſicke Goate three or foure ſpoonefuls thereof to drinke, and it will cure her. Now for any other infirmities which ſhall happen vnto Goates, you may cure them with the ſame medicines which you cure ſheepe, for their natures doe not much differ.

The end of the Goate.

Of

Of Swine.

CHAPTER. I.

Of all manner of Swine, their natures, vse, shapes, and preseruations.

Although Swine are accounted troublesome, noysome, vnruly, and great rauenours, as indeede their natures are not much differing from such qualities, yet the vtility and profit of them, will easily wipe off those offences; for to speake truely of the Swine, he is the Husbandmans best scauenger, and the Huswifes most wholesome sinke, for his foode and liuing is by that which would else rot in the yard, make it beastly, and breed no good meanure, or being cast downe the ordinary sinke in the house breed noysome smels, corruption, and infection: for from the Husband-man he taketh Pulse, Chaffe, Barne-dust, Mans-ordure, Garbage, and the weeds of his yard, and from the Huswife her Draffe, Swillings, Whey, washing of Tubs, and such like, with which he will liue and keepe a good state of body, very sufficiently, and though he is counted good in no place but the dish onely, yet there he is so lonely and so wholesome that all other faults may be borne with. He is by nature greedy, giuen much to roote vp grounds, and teare downe fences, he is very lecherous, and in that act tedious and brutish: he is subiect to much anger, and the fight of the Boares is exceeding mortall: they can by no meanes endure stormes, windes, or foule weather, they are excellent obseruers of their owne homes, and exceeding great

louers one of another: ſo that they will die vpon any beaſt that offendeth their fellowes.

Of the choyſe and ſhape of Swine.

Now touching the choyſe of Swine, you ſhall vnderſtand that no Country in England breedeth naturally better Swine one then another, but if the race and keeping be alike, the proportion and goodneſſe will be alike: therefore in the choyſe of your Swine, chiefely the Boares and Sowes which you breed of, let them be long and large of body, deepe ſided, and deepe bellied, thicke thighes, and ſhort legges, for though the long legged Swine appeare a goodly beaſt, yet he but couſeneth the eye, and is not ſo profitable to the Butcher: high clawes, thicke necke, a ſhort and ſtrong groyne, and a good thicke chine well ſet with ſtrong briſtles: the colour is beſt which is all of one peece, as all white, or all ſanded, the pide are the worſt and moſt apt to take the meazels, the blacke is tollerable, but our Kingdome through the coldneſſe breedeth them ſeldome.

The vſe and profit of Swine.

The vſe and profit of Swine is onely (as the Husbandman ſaith) for the roofe, which is Bacon, for the ſpit which is Porke, Sowſe and Puddings, and for breede, which is their Pigs onely. To haue too many Sowes in a yard is not good; for their increaſe, and bringing forth is ſo great, that they will for want of foode eate one another: A Sow will bring forth Pigs three times in a yeere, namely at the end of euery ten weekes, and the numbers are great which they will bring forth: for I haue knowne one Sow haue twenty Pigs at one litter, twelue, foureteene, and ſixeteene are very common; yet a Sow can bring vp no more Pigs then ſhe hath Teats, therefore looke how many ſhe hath, and ſo many Pigs preſerue of the beſt, the reſt caſt away, or put to other Sowes which want, yet giue ſucke. A Sow will bring Pigs from one yeere old till ſhe be ſeauen yeeres old:

The

The Pigs which you reare after you haue choſen the beſt for Bores or Sowes to breed on, geld the reſt both males and females: the males will make goodly Hogs, which are excellent Bacon or Porke, and the females which are called ſpayd-guilts, will doe the like; and breede a great deale more greaſe in their bodies, whence it comes that the Husbandman eſteems one ſpayd Guilt before two Hogges. Young ſhots which are Swine of three quarters, or but one yeere old are the daintieſt Porke.

Now for the preſeruation of Swine, it is contained in their gouernment and foode, and is all that belongeth to the office of the Swineheard. The orderlieſt feeding of Swine is, (when you keepe them, but in good ſtate of body, and not ſeeke to fat them) in the Morning earely when you vnſtie them is to giue them Draffe, Pulſe, or other garbage, with ſwillings in their troughes, and when they haue eaten it, to driue them to the field, where they may graze and roote for their food: and of grounds the ſoft mariſh and mooriſh grounds are the beſt, where they may get the rootes of Sedge, Reedes, Ruſhes, Knot-graſſe, and ſuch like, which is wholeſome for Swine: and at the fall of the Leafe it is good to driue them to hedges, where they may get Hawes, Heps, Sloes, Crabs, or ſuch fruit, which is alſo very wholeſome: and the poorer ſort will gather theſe fruites, and keepe them ſafe to feede their Swine with all the Winter. When Euening commeth, you ſhall driue your Swine home, and then filling their troughes with Draffe and Swilling, let them fill their bellies, and then ſtye them vp, ſo ſhall you keepe them from doing other hurts or iniuries. If once in a fortnight you mixe with your Swillings ſome *Radle*, or red-*Oaker*, it will preſerue them wonderfully from Meazels and all inward infecti-

ons. And thus much for the generall discourse of Swine: Now I will proceede to their particular infirmities, and other businesses.

CHAP. II.

Of the Feauer, or any hidden sickenesse in Swine.

THere is no beast maketh his sickenesse so apparant as the Swine, for when he findeth any griefe or distemperature in his body, he presently droopeth, forsakes his meate, and will not eate till he finde in himselfe a perfect recouery: Therefore when you shall so finde him to forsake his meate, you shall first let him blood vnder his tayle, and vnder his eares, and if they bleed not freshly enough, you shall beate them with a small sticke, and that will bring forth the blood; then wrap about the wounds the barke of a yong *Osier*, and then keepe him warme, and giue him to drinke warme *Swillings*, well mixt with *Barly* meale, and red *Oaker*.

The cure.

CHAP. III.

Of the Murren, Pestilence, or Catharre in Swine.

THese diseases being all of one nature are very much incident to Swine, and spring from many grounds, as from corruption in blood ingendred by the eating of rotten fruit, or too much Butchers garbage, and many times by eating too ranke grasse, wherein is much *Hemlocke*; the particular signes are, moyst eyes, and their heads borne on one side, but the generall knowledge is their fasting and mortality. The cure is, to giue them in warme *Wash*, *Hens*-dung, and boyl'd *Liuerwort*, with a little red *Oaker*.

The cure.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the Gall in Swine.

SWine will oft haue an ouer-flowing of the Gall, because choller is much powerfull in them, which you shall know by a swelling which will rise vnder their

Iawes:

Iawes: And the cure is, to ſtampe *Gall-wort*, or *Saffron*, and mixe it with *Hony* and *Water*, and then ſtrayning it, giue it the Swine to drinke by a pinte at a time. The cure.

CHAP. V.

Of the Meazels in Swine.

THis diſeaſe of all other is moſt common in Swine, and with moſt eaſe helped; as thus, you ſhall take the oldeſt *Vrine* that you can get, and mixe it with red *Ouker* till it be thicke, and about the quantitie of an Ale quart, then mixe it with a gallon of warme ſweete *Whey*, and giue it the Swine to drinke after he hath beene kept all night faſting.

CHAP. VI.

Of Impoſtumes in any part of a Swine.

SWine will haue Impoſtumes in many parts of their bodies, as vnder their throats, their eares, bellies and oft vpon their ſides. The cure is, if they be ſoft to lance them, and let out the matter, and then heale them with *Taare* and *Butter*, but if they be not ſoft, then let the Swine bloud vnder the tongue, and rub all his mouth, chappes, and groyne with *Wheat* meale and *Salt*, and the Impoſtume will goe away. The cure.

CHAP. VII.

Of vomiting in Swine.

IF your Swine doe vomit and caſt vp his meate, you ſhall giue him ſplented *Beanes* to eate, and they will ſtrengthen his ſtomacke.

CHAP. VIII.

Of Leanneſſe, Miſlike, Scurfe, and Mangineſſe in Swine.

THeſe diſeaſes proceed from corruption of bloud, ingendred by lying wet in their ſties, hauing filthy rotten litter, or much ſcarcitie of meate. The cure is, firſt to let the Swine blood vnder the taile, then to take a Wooll-Carde and to combe off all the ſcurffe and The cure.

filth

filth from the Swines backe, euen till his skinne bleed: then take *Tarre*, *Boares greaſe* and *Brimſtone*, and mixing them well together, annoynt the Swine therewith; then let the Stye be mended, his Litter be ſweet, and giue him good warme foode, and the Swine will be fat and ſound very ſodainely.

CHAP. IX.

Of the ſleeping euill in Swine.

SWine are much ſubiect to this diſeaſe in the Sommer-time, and you ſhall know it by their continuall ſleeping, and neglecting to eate their meate. The cure is, to houſe them vp, and keepe them faſting twentie and foure houres; then in the morning when hunger pincheth them, to giue them to drinke water, in which is ſtampt good ſtore of *Stonecrope*; which, as ſoone as they haue drunke, they will vomite and caſt, and that is a preſent remedy.

The cure.

CHAP. X.

Of paine in the Milt.

SWine are oft troubled with paine in their Milts or Splenes, which proceedeth from the eating of Maſt, when they are firſt put thereunto, through their ouer greedy eating thereof, and is knowne by a reeling, going of one ſide. The cure is, to giue them the iuyce of *Wormewood*, in a little *Honyed water* to drinke, and it will aſſwage the paine.

The cure.

CHAP. XI.

Of the vnnaturalneſſe of Sowes.

MAny Sowes are ſo vnnaturall that they will deuoure their Pigges when they haue farro'd them, which ſpringeth from an vnnaturall greedines in them: which to helpe, you muſt watch her when ſhe farroweth, and take away the Pigges as they fall, then take the wreckling, or worſt Pigge, and annoynt it all ouer with

the

the iuyce of *Stonecrop*, and ſo giue it to the Sow againe: and if ſhe deuoure it, it will make her caſt and vomit ſo extreamely, that the paine of the ſurfet will make her loathe to doe the like againe: But of all cures, the beſt for ſuch an vnnaturall beaſt is to feede her and kill her.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Laxe or Flixe in Hogges.

FOr the Laxe or Flixe in Swine, you ſhall giue them *Verdiuyce* and *Milke* mixt together to drinke, and then feede him with drie foode, as ſpletted *Beanes*, *Akornes* or *Akorne huskes*.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the lugging of Swine with dogges.

IF your Swine be extreamely lugged and bitten with dogs, to preuent the ranckling and impoſtumation of the ſoare, you ſhall annoynt it with *Vinegar*, *Sope*, and *Tallow* mixt together, and it will cure the ſame.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of the Poxe in Swine.

THe Poxe is a filthy and infectious diſeaſe in Swine, proceeding from corrupt blood, ingendred by pouertie, wet lying, lowſineſſe, and ſuch like; and the Swine can neuer proſper which hath them. The cure is, to giue him firſt to drinke two ſpoonefuls of *Treakle* in a pinte of *Honied water*, which will expell the infection outwardly, then to annoynt the ſores with *Brimſtone* and *Boares-greaſe* mixt together, and ſo ſeperate the ſicke from the ſound. The cure.

CHAP. XV.

Of killing Maggots in the eares or other parts of Swine.

IF Maggots ſhall breede in the eares of your Swine, which haue beene lugged with Dogges, for want of good looking vnto, as often it happeneth: you ſhall take either the ſweeteſt Worte you can get, or elſe *Honey*,

and annoynt the ſoares therewith, and the Maggots preſently will fall off and die.

CHAP. XVI.

Of feeding a Swine exceeding fat, either for Bacon, or for Larde.

The feeding of Swine in Wood Countries.

DIuers men according to the nature of diuers Countries, haue diuers waies in feeding of their Swine, as thoſe which liue neare vnto Woods, and places where ſtore of Maſt is, turne their Swine vnto the Maſt for ſixe or eight weekes, and then hauing got fleſh and fatneſſe on their backes doe bring them home, and put them vp in Sties, and then feede them for ten daies or a fortnight after with olde drie Peaſe giuen them oft in the day, and a little at once, with water, as much as they will drinke: for this will harden the fleſh and fat ſo that it will not conſume when it comes to boyling: this manner of feeding is good, and not to be diſliked.

The feeding of Swine in Champaine Countries.

Now, the feeding of Swine in champaine Countries, which are farre from Woods, is in this manner: Firſt, you ſhall ſtie vp thoſe Swine which you intend to feede, and let them not come out of the ſame till they be fed, but haue their foode and water brought vnto them: now, the firſt two daies you ſhall giue them nothing; the third day you ſhall early in the morning giue them a pretty quantitie of drie Peaſe or Beanes; at noone you ſhall giue them as much more; at foure a clocke as much more, and when you goe to bed as much more, but all that day no water: the next day you ſhall feede them againe at the ſame houres, and ſet water by them that they may drinke at their owne pleaſures; and twice or thrice a weeke, as your prouiſion will ſerue you, it is good to fill their bellies with ſweet Whay, Butter-Milke, or warme waſh, but by no meanes ſcant the proportion of their Peaſe: and by thus doing, you

ſhall

feede a Swine fat enough for the ſlaughter in foure or fiue weekes.

There be other Husbandmen in Champaine Countries as in *Leyceſterſhire*, and ſuch like, that turne their Swine to Peaſe-reekes, or ſtackes, ſet in the Fields, neere vnto water furrowes, or rundles, ſo that they may let the water into the ſtacke-yard; and then morning and euening cut a cutting of the ſtacke or reeke, and ſpread the reapes amongſt the Swine: this manner of feeding is beſt for ſmall Porkets; and will fat them reaſonably in three weeks or a moneth. If you feede Sheepe amongſt your Porkets, it is very good, and daily by many practiſed; for by that meanes you ſhall not looſe any of your Graine, for what your Sheepe cannot gather vp, your Porkets will. Of feeding at the Reeke

Now, for ſuch as liue in or neare about great Cities, or Townes, as *London*, *Yorke*, or ſuch like, and haue neither great ſtore of Maſt, nor great ſtore of Graine; yet they haue a manner of feeding as good, and ſomewhat more ſpeedier then any of the other, onely the Bacon is not ſo ſweet or toothſome; and thus it is: They ſtie vp their fatlings, as is before-ſaid, and then take Chandlers Graines, which is the dregs and offall of rendred Tallow, as hard skinnes, kils, and fleſhly lumps, which will not melt, together with other courſe skinnes of the Tallow, Suet, or Kitchin fee, and mixing it with warme Waſh, giue it the Swine to eate three or foure times in the day, and it will ſuddenly puffe him vp with fatneſſe; then beſtow of euery Swine a Buſhell of drie Peaſe to harden his fleſh, and you may then kill them at your pleaſure. The onely danger of this food is, it will at firſt ſometimes make Swine ſcoure; eſpecially young Pigges, if they eate it: but aſſoone as you perceiue ſuch a fault, giue vnto your elder Swine Of feeding of Swine in or about great Cities.

Milke and Verdiuyce, and to your Pigges Verdiuyce onely.

Of feeding Hogges for Larde, or Boares for Brawne.

Now, lastly, the best feeding of a Swine for Larde, or a Boare for Brawne, is to feede them the first weeke with Barley, sodden till it breake, and sod in such quantitie that it may euer be giuen sweete: then after to feed them with raw Mault from the floore, before it be dryed, till they be fat enough; and then for a weeke after, to giue them drie Pease or Beanes to harden their flesh. Let their drinke be the washing of Hoggesheads, or Ale Barrels, or sweete Whay, and let them haue store thereof. This manner of feeding, breeds the whitest, fattest, and best flesh that may be, as hath beene approued by the best Husbands.

The end of the Swine of all sorts.

Of

Of Conies.

CHAPTER I.

Of the tame rich Conie, his nature, choyce, profit, and preseruation.

ALL sorts of Conies may as well be kept tame as wilde, and doe aboue other Beasts delight in imprisonment and solitarinesse, which proceedeth from the strength of melancholy in their natures, being creatures so much participating of the earth, that their delight is to liue in Holes, Rockes, and other darke Cauernes. They are violently hot in the act of generation, and performe it with such vigour and excesse, that they swound and lie in traunces a good space after the deede is done. The males are giuen to much cruelty, and would kill the young Rabbets if he could come to them: whence it proceedeth, that the Females after they haue kindled, hide their young ones, and close vp their holes, so that the Bucke-Conie may not finde them. The Female, or Doe-Conies, are wonderfull in their increase, and bring forth young ones euery moneth: therefore, when you keepe them tame in Boxes, you must obserue to watch them, and as soone as they haue kindled, to put them to the Bucke, or otherwise they will mourne, and hardly bring vp their young ones. The nature of the Cony

The Boxes, in which you shall keepe your tame Conies, would be made of thinne Wainescot boards, some two foote square, and one foote high; and that square must be deuided into two roomes, a greater roome Of Boxes for tame Conies.

with open windowes of wyar, through which the Conie may feede; and a leſſer roome without light, in which the Conie may lodge, and kindle, and before them both a Trough, in which you may put meate, and other neceſſaries for the Conie: and thus you make Boxe vpon Boxe in diuers ſtories, keeping your Bucks by themſelues, and your Does by themſelues, except it be ſuch Does as haue not bred, and then you may let a Bucke lodge with them: alſo when your Doe hath kindled one neſt, and then kindleth another, you ſhall take the firſt from her, and put them together in a ſeuerall Boxe, amongſt Rabbits of their owne age; prouided that the Boxe be not peſtred, but that they may haue eaſe and libertie.

Of the choyſe of rich Conies.

Now, for the choiſe of theſe tame rich Conies, you ſhall not: as in other Cattell, looke to their ſhape, but to their richneſſe, onely elleſt your Bucks the largeſt, and goodlieſt Conies you can get: and for the richneſſe of the skin, that is accounted the richeſt, which hath the equalleſt mixture of black & white haire together, yet the blacke rather ſhadowing the white, then the white any thing at all ouermaiſtring the black, for a blacke skinne with a few ſiluer haires is much richer then a white skin with a few blacke haires: but as I ſaid before, to haue them equally or indifferently mixt is the beſt aboue all other: the Furre would be thicke, deepe, ſmooth, and ſhining, and a blacke coate without ſiluer haires though it be not reckoned a rich coate, yet it is to be preferred before a white, a pyed, a yellow, a dunne, or a gray.

Of the profit of rich Conies.

Now for the profit of theſe rich Conies, (for vnleſſe they did farre away, and by many degrees exceede the profit of all other Conies, they were not worthy the charge which muſt be beſtowed vpon them) it is this:

this: First, euery one of these rich Conies which are killed in season, as from *Martilmas* vntill *Candlemas* is worth any fiue other Conies, for they are of body much fatter and larger, and when another skinne is worth two pence or three pence at the most, they are worth two shillings, or two shillings sixe pence: againe they increase oftner, and bring forth moe Rabbets at one kindling then any wilde Cony doth; they are euer ready at hand for the dish, Winter and Summer, without charge of Nets, Ferrits, or other engins, and giue their bodies gratis, for their skins will euer pay their masters charge with a most large interest.

Of the feeding & preseruation of Conies.

Now for the feeding and preseruation of these rich Conies, it is nothing so costly or troublesome as many haue imagined, and as some (ignorant in the skill of keeping them) haue made the world thinke: for the best food you can feede a Cony with, is the sweetest, shortest, softest, and best *Hay* you can get, of which one load will serue two hundred couples a yeere, and out of the stock of two hundred, you may spend in your house two hundred, and sell in the Market two hundred, yet maintaine the stocke good, and answer euery ordinary casualtie. This *Hay* in little clouen sticks would be so placed before the Boxes that the Conies might with ease reach it, and pull it out of the same, yet so as they may not scatter nor waste any. In the troughes vnder their Boxes, you shall put sweet *Oates*, and their water, and this should be the ordinary and constant foode wherewith you should feede your Conies, for all other should be vsed but Physically, as for the preseruation of their healthes; as thus, you shall twice or thrise in a fortnight, for the cooling of their bodies, giue them *Greenes*, as *Mallowes*, *Clauer-grasse*, *Sower-docks*, blades of greene *Corne*, *Cabbage* or *Colewort* leaues, and such like, all

which

which cooleth and nourisheth exceedingly: some vse to giue them sometimes sweet *Graines*, but that must be vsed very seldome, for nothing sooner rotteth a Cony: you must also haue great care, that when you cut any grasse for them, or other weedes, that there grow no young *Hemlocke* amongst it, for though they will eate it with all greedinesse; yet it is a present poyson, and kils sodainely: you must also haue an especiall care euery day to make their Boxes sweet and cleane, for the strong sauour of their ordure and pisse is so violent, that it will both annoy themselues, and those which shall be frequent amongst them.

Of the rot in Conies.

Now for the infirmities which are incident vnto them, they are but two: the first is rottennesse, which commeth by giuing them too much greene meate, or gathering their *Greenes* and giuing it them with the Dewe on; therefore let them haue it but seldome, and then the drinesse of the *Hay* will euer drinke vp the moisture, knit them, and keepe them sound without danger.

Of madnes in Conies.

The next is a certaine rage or madnesse, ingendred by corrupt bloud springing from the ranckenesse of their keeping; and you shall know it by their wallowing and tumbling with their heeles vpward, and leaping in their Boxes. The cure is, to giue them *Harethistell* to eate, and it will heale them. And thus much of the tame rich Cony and his properties.

The end of the foure-footed Beasts.

Of

The second Booke.

Of Poultrie.

CHAPTER. I.

Containing the ordering, fatting, cramming, and curing of all infirmities of Poultry, as Cocks, Hens, Chickens, Capons, Geese, Turkies, Phesants, Partridges, Quailes, Housedoues, and all sorts of Fowle whatsoeuer. And first, of the dung-hill-Cocke, Henne, Chicken and Capon.

SOme small thing hath beene written of this nature before, but so drawne from the opinions of old Writers, as Italians, French, Dutch, and such like, that it hath no coherence or congruitie with the practise and experience of English customes, both their rules and climbes being so different from ours, that except we were to liue in their Countries, the rules which are Printed are vseless, and to no purpose. To let passe then the opinion of strangers, and come to our owne home-bred knowledge, which is so mixed with all profitable experiments, that it needeth not the modles of other Nations so much as men would make vs beleeue. You shall vnderstand that the dung-hill Cocke (for the fighting Cocke deserueth a much larger and particular discourse) is a Fowle of all other birds the most manliest, stately, and maiesticall, very tame and familiar with the Man, and naturally inclined to liue and prosper in habitable houses: he is hot and strong in the Act of generation, and will serue ten Hens sufficiently, and some, twelue and thirteene: He delighteth in open and liberall

Of the dunghill Cocke.

liberall plaines, where he may lead forth his Hens into greene paſtures, and vnder hedges, where they may worme and bathe themſelues in the Sunne, for to be pent vp in walled places, or in paued Courts is moſt vnnaturall vnto them, neither will they proſper therein.

Of the choyſe and ſhape of the Cocke.

Now of the choiſe and ſhape of the dung-hill Cocke, he would be of a large and well ſiſed body, long from the head to the rumpe, and thicke in the garth; his necke would be long, looſe and curiouſly bending it, and his body together being ſtraight, and high vp erected as the Falcon and other birds of pray are, his combe, wattles, and throat would be large, great compaſſe, iagged, and very Scarlet red, his eyes round and great, the colour anſwering the colour of his plume or male, as gray with gray, red with red, or yellow with yellow, his bill would be crooked, ſharpe, and ſtrongly ſet on to his head, the colour being ſutable with the colour of the feathers on his head, his mayne or necke-feathers would be very long, bright, and ſhining, couering from his head to his ſhoulders, his legs ſtraight, and of a ſtrong beame, with large long ſpurres, ſharpe and a little bending, and the colour blacke, yellow, or blewiſh, his clawes ſhort, ſtrong and well wrinckled; his tayle long, and couering his body very cloſely: and for the generall colour of the dung-hill Cocke, it would be red, for that is medicinall, and oft vſed in Cullifſes and reſtoratiues. This Cocke ſhould be valiant within his owne walke, and if he be a little knauiſh, he is ſo much the better; he would be oft crowing, and buſie in ſcratching the earth to finde out wormes and other food for his Hennes.

Of the Hen her choyſe and ſhape.

Now for the Henne, if ſhe be a good one, ſhe ſhould not differ much from the nature of the Cocke, but be valiant, vigilant, and laborious both for her ſelfe and her Chickens. In ſhape the biggeſt and largeſt are the beſt,

best, euery proportion answering these before described of the Cocke, onely in stead of her Combe she should haue vpon her crowne a high thicke tuft of feathers: to haue many and strong clawes is good, but to want hinder clawes is better, for they oft breake the Egges, and such Hens sometimes proue vnnaturall: it is not good to chuse a crowing Henne, for they are neither good breeders nor good layers.

If you chuse Hens to sit, chuse the elder, for they be constant, and will sit out their times; and if you will chuse Hens to lay, chuse the youngest, for they are lusty and prone to the act of ingendring, but for neither purpose chuse a fat Hen, for if you set her, she will forsake her Nest, and if you keepe her to lay, she will lay her Egs without shels. Besides, a fat Hen will waxe sloathfull, and neither delight in the one nor the other Art of nature, such Hens then are euer fitter for the dish then the Henne-house.

The best time to set Hennes to haue the best, largest, and most kindely Chickens, is in February, in the increase of the Moone, so that she may hatch or disclose her Chickens in the increase of the next new Moone being in March, for one brood of March Chickens is worth three broods of any other: you may set Hennes from March till October, and haue good Chickens, but not after by any meanes, for the Winter is a great enemie to their breeding. A Henne doth sit twenty one daies iust, and then hatcheth, but Peahennes, Turkies, Geese, Ducks, and other water-fowle sit thirty: so that if you set your Henne, as you may doe vpon any of their egges, you must set her vpon them nine daies before you set her vpon her owne. A Henne will couer nineteene egges well, and that is the most, in true rule, she should couer, but vpon what number soeuer you set her,

Of setting Hennes.

her, let it be odde, for ſo the egges will lie round, cloſe, and in euen proportion together: It is good when you lay your Egges firſt vnder your Hennes, to marke the vpper ſide of them, and then to watch the Henne, to ſee if ſhe buſie her ſelfe to turne them from the one ſide to the other, which if you finde ſhe doth not, then when ſhe riſeth from her egges, to feede or bathe her ſelfe, you muſt ſupply that office, and turne euery egge your ſelfe, and eſteeme your Hen of ſo much the leſſe reckoning for the vſe of breeding: be ſure that the Egges which you lay vnder her, be new and ſound, which you may know by their heauineſſe, fulneſſe, and cleereneſſe, if you hold them vp betwixt the Sunne and your eie-light; you muſt by no meanes, at any time raiſe your Henne from her neſt, for that will make her vtterly forſake it.

Choyſe of Egges.

Now, for helping a Henne to hatch her Egges, or doing that which ſhould be her office, it is vnneceſſary, and ſhall be much better to be forborne then any way vſed; or to make doubt of bringing forth, or to thinke the Henne ſitteth too long (as many fooliſh curious houſewifes doe) if you be ſure you ſet her vpon ſound Egges, is as friuolous, but if you ſet her vpon vnſound Egges, then blame your ſelfe, both of the loſſe and iniurie done to the Henne in her loſſe of labour. A Henne will be a good ſitter from the ſecond yeere of her laying to the fift, but hardly any longer: you ſhall obſerue euer when your Hen riſeth from her neſt, to haue meate and water ready for her, leaſt ſtraying too farre to ſeeke her foode, ſhe let her Egges coole too much, which is very hurtfull. In her abſence you ſhall ſtirre vp the ſtraw of her neſt, and make it ſoft and handſome, and lay the Egges in order, as ſhe left them; doe not in the election of your Egges, chuſe thoſe which are monſtrous great, for they many times haue two yolks, and though

ſome

some write, that such Egs will bring out two Chickens, yet they are deceiued, for if they bring forth two, they are commonly most abortiue and monstrous. To perfume the nest with Brimstone is good, but with Rosemary is much better. To set Hens in the winter time in stowes or ouens is of no vse with vs in *England*, and though they may by no meanes bring forth, yet will the Chickens be neuer good nor profitable, but like the planting of Lemon and Pomegranate trees, the fruit will come a great deale short of the charges. When your Hen at any time is absent from her nest, you must haue great care to see that the Cocke come not to sit vpon the Egges, (as he will offer to doe) for he will endanger to breake them, and make her loue her nest worse.

Of Chickens

Assoone as your Chickens be hatcht, if any be weaker then other, you shall lappe them in wooll, and let them haue the ayre of the fire, and it will strengthen them: to perfume them with a little Rosemary is very wholesome also; and thus you may in a siue keepe the first hatcht Chickins till the rest be disclosed (for Chickins would haue no meate for two daies) and some shels being harder then other, they will take so much distance of time in opening: yet vnlesse the Chickins be weake, or the Hen rude, it is not amisse to let them alone vnder her, for shee will nourish them most kindly: after two dayes is past, the first meate you giue them should be very small Oatemeale, some drie, and some steept in Milke, or else fine wheat-bread crummes, and after they haue got strength, then Curds, Cheese-parings, white bread crusts soak'd in Milke or drinke; Barley-meale or wheate-bread scalded, or any such like soft meat that is small, and will easily be deuided. It is good to keepe Chickes one fortnight in the house, and after to suffer them to goe abroad with the Henne to worme, for that

is very wholesome: to chop greene Chyues amongst your Chickens meate will preserue them from the Rye, and other diseases in the head; neither must you at any time let your Chickens want water, for if they be forc'd to drinke in puddles, it will breede the Pippe: also, to feede vpon Tares, Darnell, or Cockell, is dangerous for young Chickens.

Of feeding and cramming Chickens.

You may by these foodes before said, feede Chickens very fat vnder their Dammes: but if you will haue fat cram'd Chickens, you shall coope them vp when the Dam forsaketh them, and the best crammes for them is Wheate-Meale and Milke, and made into dough, and then the crammes steeped in Milke, and so thrust down their throats; but in any case, let the crams be small, and well wet for choaking. Foureteene daies will feede a Chicken sufficiently: and thus much briefely for your breede.

Of preseruing Egges.

Now, because Egges of themselues are a singular profit; you shall vnderstand, that the best way to preserue or keepe them long, is, as some thinke, to lay them in Straw, and couer them close, but that is too colde; and besides will make them mustie: others will lay them in Branne, but that is too hot, and will make them putrifie: and others will lay them in Salt, but that makes them waste and diminish: the best way then to keepe them most sweet, most sound, and most full, is onely to keepe them in a heape of old Malt, close, and well couered all ouer.

Of gathering Egges.

You shall gather your Egges vp once a day, and leaue in the nest but the nest-Egge, and no more; and that would euer be in the after-noone when you haue seene euery Henne come from her nest seuerally: some Hens will by their cackling tell you when they haue laid, but some will lay mute, therefore you must let your owne eye be your instructer.

Now

Now, touching the Capon, which is the gueld Cocke-chicken, you shall vnderstand, that the best time to carue or gueld him, is as soone as the Dam hath left them, (if the stones be come downe (or else as soone as they begin to crowe: for the Art of caruing it selfe, it is both common and easie, and much sooner to be learned by seeing one carued, then by any demonstration in writing. Of the Capon, when to carue him.

These Capons are of two vses: the one is, to lead Chickens, Ducklings, young Turkies, Peahennes, Pheasants and Partridges, which he will doe altogether, both naturally and kindely, and through largenesse of his body will brood or couer easily thirty or thirty and fiue; he will leade them forth safely, and defend them against Kites or Buzzards, more better then the Hennes: therefore the way to make him to take, is, with a fine small Brier, or else sharpe Nettles at night, to beate and sting all his brest and neather parts, and then in the darke to seate the Chickins vnder him, whose warmth taketh away his smart, he will fall much in loue with them, and when so euer he proueth vnkinde, you must sting, or beate him againe, and this will make him he will neuer forsake them. A Capon to leade Chickins.

The other vse of Capons is, to feede for the Dish, as either at the Barne dores, with craps of Corne and the chauings of pulse, or else in Pens in the house, by cramming them, which is the most dainty. The best way then to cram a Capon (setting all strange inuentions apart) is to take Barley-meale, reasonably sifted, and mixing it with new Milke, make it into a good stiffe dough; then make it into long crams, biggest in the midst, and small at both ends, and then wetting them in lukewarme Milke, giue the Capon a full gorgefull thereof three times a day, Morning, Noone, and Night, and he will Of feeding or Cramming Capons.

in

in three weekes be as fat for any man neede to eate. As for mixing their crams with ſweet Worte, Hogs-greaſe, or Sallet-Oyle, they are by experience found to breede loath in the Birds, and not to feede at all, onely keepe this obſeruation, not to giue your Capon new meat till the firſt be put ouer; and if you finde your Capon hard of diſgeſtion, then you ſhall ſift your meale finer, for the finer your meale is, the ſooner it will paſſe through their bodies. And thus much for the Capon. Now for their infirmities, they follow in order.

CHAP. II.

Of the Pippe in Poultrie.

THe Pippe is a white thin ſcale, growing on the tippe of the tongue, and will make Poultrie they cannot feede: it is eaſie to be diſcerned, and proceedeth from drinking puddle water, from want of water, or from eating filthy meate. The cure is, to pull off the ſcale with your naile, and then rub the tongue with ſalt.

The cure.

CHAP. III.

Of the roupp in Poultrie.

THe roupp is a filthy bile or ſwelling on the rompe of Poultrie, and will corrupt the whole body. It is knowne by the ſtaring and turning backewards of the feathers. The cure is, to pull away the feathers, and opening the ſore to thruſt out the Core, and then waſh the place with Salt and Water, or with brine; and it helpeth.

The cure.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the Fluxe in Poultrie.

THe fluxe in Poultrie commeth with eating too much moyſt meate. The cure is, to giue them Peaſe-branne ſcalded, and it will ſtay them.

The cure.

CHAP. V.

Of ſtopping in the belly.

STopping in the bellies of Poultrie, is contrary to the fluxe, ſo that they cannot mute: therefore, you ſhall annoynt

annoint their vents, and then giue them either ſmall bits of bread, or Corne ſteept in mans vrine.

CHAP. VI.

Of Lice in Poultrie.

IF your Poultrie be much trouble with lice, as it is a common infirmitie, proceeding from corrupt foode, or want of bathing in ſand, aſhes, or ſuch like; you ſhall take Pepper ſmall beaten, and mixing it with warme water, waſh your Poultrie therein, and it will kill all ſorts of vermine.

CHAP. VII.

Of ſtinging with venemous wormes.

IF your Poultrie be ſtung with any venemous thing, as you may perceiue by their lowring and ſwelling, you ſhall then annoint them with Rewe and Butter mixt together, and it helpeth.

CHAP. VIII.

Of ſore eyes in Poultrie.

IF your Poultrie haue ſore eies, you ſhall take a leafe or two of ground-Iuie, and chawing it in your mouth, ſucke out the iuyce, and ſpit it into the ſore eye, and it will moſt aſſuredly heale it.

CHAP. IX.

Of Hennes which Crowe.

IF your Hennes crowe, which is an ill ſigne and vnnaturall; you ſhall pull their wings, and giue her to eate either Barley ſcorched, or ſmall wheate, and keepe her cloſe from other Poultrie.

CHAP. X.

Of Hennes that eate their Egges.

IF your henne will eate her Egges, you ſhall onely lay for her neſt-Egge a piece of Chalke cut like an Egge, at which oft pecking and looſing her labour ſhe will refraine the euill.

CHAP. XI.

Of keeping a Henne from ſitting.

IF you would not haue your henne ſit, you ſhall bathe her oft in colde water, and thruſt a ſmall feather through her noſthrils.

CHAP. XII.

Of making Hennes lay ſoone and oft.

IF you feede your hennes often with toaſts taken out of Ale, with Barley boilde, or ſplitted fitches, they will lay ſoone, oft, and all the winter.

CHAP. XIII.

Of making Hennes leane.

BEcauſe fat hennes commonly either lay their Egges without ſhels, or at the beſt hand lay very ſmall Egges: to keepe them leane, and in good plight for laying, you ſhall mixe both their meate and water with the pouder of *Tyleſheards*, *Chalke*, or elſe *Tares*, twice or thrice a weeke.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of the Crow-trodden.

IF your Henne be trodden with a carryon Crow, or Rooke, as oft they are, it is mortall and incurable, and you ſhall know it by the ſtaring vp of her feathers, and hanging of her wings, there is no way with her then but preſently to kill her.

CHAP. XV.

Of the Henne-houſe, and the ſcituation.

NOw for as much as no Poultry can be kept either in health or ſafetie abroad, but muſt of force be houſed, you ſhall vnderſtand that your Henne-houſe would be large and ſpacious with ſomwhat a high roofe, the wals ſtrong, both to keepe out theeues and vermine, the windowes vpon the Sunne riſing, ſtrongly lathed, and cloſe ſhuts inward, round about the inſide of the

wals vpon the ground would be built large pens of three foot high, for Geese, Duckes, and great fowle to sit in. Neare to the eauings of the house would be long Pearches, reaching from one side of the house to the other, on which should sit your Cocks, Hennes, Capons and Turkies, each on seuerall Pearches, as they are disposed: at another side of the house in that part which is darkest, ouer the ground pens, would be fixed hampers full of straw for nests, in which your Hens shall lay their Egges; but when they sit to bring forth Chickens, then let them sit on the ground, for otherwise is dangerous: let there be pins stricken into the wals, so that your Poultrie may climbe to their Pearches with ease: let the flore by no meanes be paued, but of earth, smooth and easie: let the smaller fowle haue a hole at one end of the house made to come in and out at, when they please, or else they will seeke roust in other places, and for the greater fowle the doore may be opened Euening and Morning; this house would be placed either neare some Kitchin, Brewhouse, or else some Kilne, where it may haue ayre of the fire, and be perfumed with smoke, which to Pullen is delightfull and wholesome. And thus much of the Cocke, Henne, Capon, and Chicken.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Geese, their nature, choise, and how to breed them.

GEese, are a fowle of great profit many waies, as first for foode, next for their feathers, and lastly for their grease. They are held of Husband-men to be fowle of two liues, because they liue both on land and water: and therefore all men must vnderstand, that except he haue either Pond or Streame, he can neuer keepe Geese well. They are so watchfull and carefull ouer themselues that they will preuent most dangers: Grasse also they must necessa-

rily haue, and the worſt, and that which is the moſt vſeleſſe is the beſt, as that which is mooriſh, rotten, and vnſauoury for cattell. To good graſſe they are a great enemy, for their dung and treading will putrifie it, and make it worſe then barraine.

The choyſe of Geeſe.

Now for the choyſe of Geeſe, the largeſt is the beſt, and the colour would be white or gray, all of on paire, for pyde are not ſo profitable, and blacke are worſe: your Gander would be knauiſh and hardy, for he will defend his Goſlings the better.

Of laying egges and ſitting.

Now for the laying of egges, a Gooſe beginneth to lay in the Spring, and ſhe that layeth earelieſt is euer the beſt Gooſe, for ſhe may haue a ſecond hatch. Geeſe will lay from February to Iune, and ordinarily a Gooſe will lay twelue, and ſome ſixeteene egges; ſome will lay more, but it is ſeldome, and they cannot be all well couered: you ſhall know when your Gooſe will lay, by her carrying of ſtraw vp and downe in her mouth, and ſcattering it abroad; and you ſhall know when ſhe will ſit by her continuing on the neſt ſtill after ſhe hath laid. You muſt ſet a Gooſe vpon her owne egges, for ſhe will hardly or vnkindly ſit another Gooſes egges: you ſhall in her ſtraw when you ſet her, mixe *Nettle* rootes, for it is good for the Goſlings: thirtie daies is the full time that a Gooſe ſitteth, but if the weather be faire and warme, ſhe will hatch three or foure daies ſooner: euer when the Gooſe riſeth from her Neſt, you ſhall giue her meate, as ſlegge Oates, and Branne ſcalded, and giue her leaue to bathe in the water. After ſhe hath hatched her Goſlings, you ſhall keepe them in the houſe ten daies, and feede them with curds, ſcalded chippings, or Barley-meale in Milke knoden and broken, alſo ground Malt is excellent good, or any Branne that is ſcalded in Water, Milke, or tappings of drinke. After they haue

Ordering of Goſlings.

got

got a little ſtrength, you may let them goe abroad with a keeper fiue or ſixe houres in a day, and let the dam at her pleaſure intice them into the water; then bring them in, and put them vp, and thus order them till they be able to defend themſelues from vermine. After a Goſling is a month or ſixe weekes old, you may put it vp to feede for a greene Gooſe, and it will be perfectly fed in another moneth following: and to feede them there is no meate better then ſlegge Oates, boyl'd & giuen plenty thereof thriſe a day, Morning, Noone, and Night, with good ſtore of Milke, or Milke & Water to drinke.

Of greene Geeſe and their fatting

Now you ſhall vnderſtand one Gander will ſerue well fiue Geeſe, and to haue not aboue forty Geeſe in a flock is beſt, for to haue more is both hurtfull and troubleſome.

Of Ganders.

Now for the fatting of elder Geeſe which are thoſe which are fiue or ſixe moneths old, you ſhall vnderſtand that after they haue in the ſtubble fields, and during the time of harueſt got into good fleſh, you ſhall then chuſe out ſuch Geeſe as you will feede, and put them in ſeueral pens which are cloſe and darke, and there feede them thrice a day with good ſtore of Oates, or ſpelted Beanes, and giue them to drinke Water and Barley-meale mixt together, which muſt euermore ſtand before them, this will in three weekes feede a Gooſe ſo fat as is needefull.

Fatting of elder Geeſe.

Now laſtly, for the gathering of a Gooſes feathers; you ſhall vnderſtand, that howſoeuer ſome Writer aduiſe you for a needles profit to pull your Gooſe twiſe a yeere, March and Auguſt: yet certainly it is very nought and ill: for firſt, by diſabling the flight of the Gooſe, you make her ſubiect to the cruelty of the Foxe, and other rauenous beaſts, and by vncloathing her in Winter, you ſtrike that cold into her which kils her ſodainly, therefore

Of gathering Geeſe feathers.

it is beſt to ſtay till moulting time, or till you kill her, and then you may imploy all her feathers at your pleaſure, either for beds, Fletchers, or Scriueners.

Of the Gargill in Geeſe.

For infirmities in Geeſe, the moſt and worſe they are ſubiect vnto, is the Gargill; which is a mortall ſtopping of the head. And the cure is, to take three or foure cloues of *Garlike*, and beating them in a morter with ſweet *Butter*, make little long bals thereof, and giue two or three of them to the Gooſe, faſting, and then ſhut her vp for two houres after.

The cure.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Turkies, their nature, vſe, increaſe and breeding.

TVrkies, howſoeuer by ſome writers they are held deuourers of Corne, ſtrayers abroad, euer puling for meate, and many ſuch like fained troubles, as if they were vtterly vnprofitable; yet it is certaine they are moſt delicate, either in Paſte, or from the Spit, and being fat, farre exceeding any other houſe-fowle whatſoeuer; nay they are kept with more eaſe and leſſe coſt: for they will take more paines for their foode then any other Bird, onely they are enemies to a Garden, and from thence muſt euer be barred. They are when they are young very tender to bring vp, both becauſe they haue a ſtraying nature in themſelues; and the dammes are ſo negligent that whileſt ſhe hath one following her, ſhe neuer reſpecteth the reſt; therefore they muſt haue a vigilant keeper to attend them till they can ſhift for themſelues, and then they will flocke together and ſeldome be parted. Till you fat them you neede not take care for foode for them; they loue to rooſt in trees or other high places.

The choyſe of the Turkie-Cocke.

Now for your choyſe of ſuch as you would breede on; your Turkie-Cocke would not bee aboue two

yeere

yeere old at moſt, be ſure that he be louing to the Chickens, and for your Hen ſhe will lay till ſhe be fiue yeeres old and vpward. Your Turkie-Cocke would be a Bird large, ſtout, proud, and maieſticall, for when he walketh dejected, he is neuer good treader.

Of the Turkie-Henne, her ſitting.

The Turky-Henne if ſhe be not preuented will lay abroad in ſecret places, therefore you muſt watch her, and bring her into your Henne-houſe, and there compell her to lay. They begin to lay in March, and will ſit in Aprill, and eleauen egges or thirteene is the moſt they ſhould couer: they hatch euer betweene fiue and twenty, and thirty daies. When they haue hatcht their broods be ſure to keepe the Chicks warme, for the leaſt cold kils them, and feede them either with Curds, or greene freſh-Cheeſe cut into ſmall peeces. Let their drinke be Milke, or Milke and Water: you muſt be carefull to feede them oft; for the Turky-henne will not like the Houſe-henne call her Chickens to feede them. When your Chicks haue got ſtrength, you ſhall feede them abroad in ſome cloſe walled graſſe-plat, where they cannot ſtray, or elſe euer be at charge of a Keeper. The dewe is moſt hurtfull vnto them, therefore you muſt houſe them at night, and let them abroad after Sunne riſe in the Morning.

Of feeding Turkies.

Now for the fatting of Turkies, ſodden Barly is excellent, or ſodden Oates for the firſt fortnight, and then for another fortnight cramme them in all ſorts as you cramme your Capon, and they will be fat beyond meaſure. Now for their infirmities: when they are at libertie, they are ſuch good Phyſitions for themſelues, that they will neuer trouble their owners, but being coopt vp, you muſt cure them as is before diſcribed for Pullen. Their egges are exceeding wholeſome to eate, and reſtore nature decayed wonderfully.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Ducke, and ſuch like water-fowles.

THe tame Ducke is an exceeding neceſſarie fowle for the Husbandmans yard, for ſhee asketh no charge in keeping, but liueth of corne loſt, or other things of leſſe profit. She is once a yeere a very great layer of egges, and when ſhe ſitteth ſhe craues both attendance and feeding: for being reſtrayned from ſeeking her foode, ſhe muſt be helped with a little barley, or other ouer-chauing of corne, ſuch as elſe you would giue vnto Swine: as for her ſitting, hatching and feeding of her Ducklings, it is in all points to be obſerued in ſuch manner as you did before with the Gooſe, onely after they are abroad they will ſhift better for their food then Goſlings will. For the fatting of Duckes or Ducklings, you may doe it in three weekes, by giuing them any kinde of Pulſe or graine, and good ſtore of water.

Of wilde-Duckes, and their ordering.

If you will preſerue wilde-Ducks, you muſt wall in a little peece of ground, in which is ſome little Pond or Spring, and couer the toppe of it all ouer with a ſtrong Net: the Pond muſt be ſet with many tufts of Oziers, and haue many ſecret holes and creekes in, for that will make them delight and feede though impriſoned. The wilde Duck when ſhe layeth, will ſteale from the Drake, and hide her Neſt, for he elſe will ſucke the Egges. When ſhe hath hatcht ſhe is moſt carefull to nouriſh them, and needeth no attendance more then meate, which would be giuen freſh twicke a day, as ſcalded Bran, Oates, or Fitches. The houſe-Hen will hatch wilde-Ducks-egges, and the meate will be much better, yet euery time they goe into the water, they are in danger of the Kite, becauſe the Hen cannot guard them. In the ſame manner

as

as you nouriſh wilde Duckes, ſo you may nouriſh Tailes, Widgens, Sheldrakes, or greene Plouers.

CHAP. XIX.

Of Swannes, and their feeding.

TO ſpeake of the breeding of Swannes is needleſſe, becauſe they can better order themſelues in that buſineſſe then any man can direct them, onely where they build their Neſts, you ſhall ſuffer them to remaine vndiſturbed, and it will be ſufficient: but for the feeding of them fat for the diſh, you ſhall feede your Cygnets in all ſorts as you feede your Geeſe, and they will be thorow fat in ſeauen or eight weekes, either coop't vp in the houſe, or elſe walking abroad in ſome priuate Court; but if you would haue them fat in ſhorter ſpace, then you ſhall feede them in ſome Pond, hedg'd or payl'd in for the purpoſe, hauing a little drie ground left where they may ſit and prune themſelues, and you may place two troughes, one full of Barly and Water, the other full of old dried Malt, on which they may feede at their pleaſure, and thus doing, they will be fat in leſſe then foure weekes: for by this meanes a Swanne keepeth himſelfe neate and cleane, who being a much defiled Bird, liueth in drie places ſo vncleanely that they cannot proſper, vnleſſe his attender be diligent to dreſſe and trimme his walke euery houre.

CHAP. XX.

Of Peacocks, and Peahens, their increaſe and ordering.

PEacocks, howſoeuer our old writers are pleaſed to deceiue themſelues in their praiſes, are Birds more to delight the eye by looking on them, then for any particular profit; the beſt

commodity riſing from them, being the clenſing and keeping of the yard free from venemous things, as Toads, Newtes, and ſuch like, which is their daily food: whence it comes, that their fleſh is very vnwholeſome, and vſed in great banquets more for the rareneſſe then the nouriſhment; for it is moſt certaine, roſte a Peacocke or Peahenne neuer ſo drie, then ſet it vp, and looke on it the next day, and it will be blood-rawe, as if it had not beene roſted at all.

The Peahen loues to lay her Egges abroad in buſhes and hedges, where the Cocke may not finde them, for if he doe he will breake them; therefore as ſoone as ſhe begins to lay ſeperate her from the Cocke, and houſe her till ſhe haue brought forth her young, and that the cronet of feathers begin to riſe at their foreheads, and and then turne them abroad, and the Cocke will loue them, but not before. A Peahenne ſits iuſt thirty daies, and in her ſitting any graine, with water, is foode good enough: before your Chickens go abroad you ſhal feede them with freſh greene Cheeſe, and Barly-Meale, with water; but after they goe abroad the Dam will prouide for them. The beſt time to ſet a Peahenne is at the beginning of the Moone, and if you ſet Henne-Egges amongſt her Egges, ſhe will nouriſh both equally. Theſe Peachickens are very tender, and the leaſt cold doth kill them: therefore you muſt haue care to keepe them warme, and not to let them goe abroad but when the Sunne ſhineth. Now, for the feeding of them, it is a labour you may well ſaue, for if they goe in a place where there is any corne ſtirring, they will haue part, and being meate which is ſeldome or neuer eaten, it matteth not ſo much for their fatting.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the tame Pidgeon, or rough footed.

THe tame rough footed Pidgeon differs not much from the wilde Pidgeon, onely they are ſomewhat bigger, and more familiar, and apt to be tame; they commonly bring not forth aboue one paire of Pidgeons at a time, and thoſe which are the leaſt of body are euer the beſt breeders. They muſt haue their roomes and boxes made cleane once a weeke; for they delight much in neatneſſe, and if the wals be outwardly whited or painted they loue it the better, for they delight much in faire buildings. They will bring forth their young ones once a moneth, if they be well fed, and after they be once payr'd they will neuer be diuided. The Cocke is a very louing and naturall Birde, both to his Henne and the young ones, and will ſit the Egges whileſt the Hen feedeth, as the Hen ſits whileſt he feedeth: he will alſo feede the young with as much painefulneſſe as the Dam doth, and is beſt pleaſed when he is brooding them. Theſe kinde of Pidgeons you ſhall feede with white Peaſe, and good ſtore of cleane water. In the roome where they lodge you ſhall euer haue a ſalt-Cat for them to pecke on, and that which is gathered from Saltpeter is the beſt: alſo, they would haue good ſtore of drie Sand, Grauell and pybble, to bathe and clenſe themſelues with all, and aboue all things great care taken, that no vermine, or other Birds come not into their boxes, eſpecially Sterlings, and ſuch like, which are great Egge-ſuckers. And thus much of the tame Pidgeon.

CHAP. XXII.

Of nouriſhing and fatting Hearnes, Puets, Guls, and Bitters.

HEarnes are nouriſhed for two cauſes; either for Princes ſports, to make traines for the entring their Hawkes, or elſe to furniſh out the Table at great feaſts: the manner of bringing them vp with leaſt charge, is to take them out of their neſts before they can flie, and put them into a large high Barne, where there is many high and croſſe beams for them to pearch on: then to haue on the floore diuers ſquare boords with rings in them, and betweene euery boord which would be two yards ſquare, to place round ſhallow tubbes full of water; then to the boords you ſhall tye great gobbets of dogges fleſh, cut from the bones, according to the number which you feede; and be ſure to keepe the houſe ſweet, and ſhift the water oft, onely the houſe muſt be made ſo that it may raine in now and then, in which the Hearne will take much delight. But if you feede her for the diſh, then you ſhall feede them with Liuers, and the intrailes of Beaſtes, and ſuch like, cut in great gobbets; and this manner of feeding will alſo feede either Gull, Puet, or Bitter: but the Bitter is euer beſt to be fed by the hand, becauſe when you haue fed him you may tie his beake together, or he will caſt vp his meate againe.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of feeding the Partridge, Pheſant, and Quaile.

THeſe three are the moſt daintieſt of all other Birds, & for the Pheſant or Partridge you may feede them both in one roome, where you may haue little boxes where they may run and hide themſelues in diuers corners of the roome; then in the midſt you ſhall haue

three wheate ſheaues, two with their eares vpward, and one with the eares downeward, and neere vnto them ſhallow Tubs with water, that the Fowle may pecke the wheat out of the eares, and drinke at their pleaſures, and by this manner of feeding you ſhall haue them as fat as is poſſible: as for your Quailes, the beſt feeding them is in long flat ſhallow boxes, each boxe able to hold two or three dozen, the foremoſt ſide being ſet with round pins ſo thicke that the Quaile may doe no more but put out her head, then before that open ſide ſhall ſtand one trough full of ſmall chilter wheate, and another with water; and thus in one fortnight or three weekes you ſhall haue them exceeding fat.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of Godwits, Knots, gray-plouer, or Curlewes.

FOr to feede any of theſe Fowles, which are eſteemed of all other the daintieſt and deereſt, fine Chilter wheat and water giuen them thrice a day, Morning, Moone, and Night, will doe it very effectually; but if you intend to haue them extraordinary and crammed fowle, then you ſhall take the fineſt dreſt wheate-meale, and mixing it with Milke, make it into paſte, & euer as you knead it ſprinkle into it the graines of ſmall Chilterwheat till the paſte be fully mixt therewith; then make little ſmall crams thereof, and dipping them in water, giue to euery fowle according to his bigneſſe, and that his gorge be well filled: doe thus as oft as you ſhall finde their gorges emptie, and in one fortnight they will be fed beyond meaſure. And with theſe crammes you may feede any Fowle, of what kinde or nature ſoeuer.

CHAP. XXV.

Of feeding Blacke-birds, Thruſhes, Felfares, or any ſmall Birds whatſoeuer.

TO feede theſe Birds, being taken olde and wilde, it is good to haue ſome of their kindes tame to mixe among them, and then putting them into great Cages of three or foure yards ſquare, to haue diuers troughs placed therein, ſome filled with Heps and Hawes, ſome with Hempe-ſeed, ſome with Rape-ſeed, ſome with Linſeed, and ſome with water, that the tame teaching the wilde to eate, and the wilde finding ſuch change and alteration of food, they will in twelue or foureteene daies grow exceeding fat and fit for the vſe of the Kitchin.

The end of the Poultrie.

Of

Of Hawkes.

CHAPTER. I.

Of the generall Cures for all diſeaſes and infirmities in Hawkes, whether they be ſhort winged Hawkes, or long winged Hawkes; and firſt, of Caſtings.

HAwkes, are deuided into two kindes, that is to ſay, ſhort winged Hawkes; as the Goſ-hawke and her Tercell, the Sparrow-Hawke, Muſket, and ſuch like, whoſe wings are ſhorter then their traines, and doe belong to the Oſtringer; and long-Winged Hawkes, as the Faulcon-gentle, and her tercell; the Gerfaulcon and Lerkin, the Lanner, Merlin, Hobby, and diuers others, which belong vnto Faulconers. Now, for as much as their infirmities, for the moſt part, proceede from the indiſcretion of their gouernours, if they flie them out of ſeaſon, before they be inſeamed and haue the fat, glut, and filthineſſe of their bodies ſcoured and cleanſed out, I thinke it not amiſſe firſt to ſpeake of Hawkes caſtings, which are the naturalleſt and gentleſt purges or ſcourings a Hawke can take, and doth the leaſt offend the vitall parts. Therefore you ſhall know, that all Oſtringers doe eſteeme plumage, and the ſoft feathers of ſmall Birds, with ſome part of the skinne, to be the beſt caſting a ſhort winged Hawke can take; and for the purging of her head, to make her tyer much vpon ſheepes rumpes,

the

the fat cut away, and the bones well couered with Parcely. But for longwinged Hawkes, the beſt caſting is fine Flannell, cut into ſquare pieces of an inch and a halfe ſquare, and all to iagged, and ſo giuen with a little bit of meate. By theſe caſtings you ſhall know the ſoundneſſe and vnſoundneſſe of your Hawke: for when ſhe hath caſt, you ſhall take vp the caſting, which will be like a hard round pellet, ſomewhat long, and preſſe it betweene your fingers, and if you finde nothing but cleere water come from it, then it is a ſigne your Hawke is ſound and luſtie; if there come from it a yellowiſh or filthy matter, or if it ſtincke, it is a ſigne of rottenneſſe and diſeaſe; but if it be greazy or ſlimy on the one ſide, then it is a ſigne the Hawke is full of greaſe inwardly, which is not broken nor diſſolued: and then you ſhall giue her a ſcouring, which is a much ſtronger purgation, and of Scourings the gentleſt, next caſting, is to take foure or fiue Pellets of the yellow roote of Selladine, well clenſed from filth, being as bigge as great Peaſe, and giue them out of water earely in a Morning, when the Hawke is faſting, and it will clenſe her mightily. If you take theſe pellets of Selladine, and giue them out of the oyle of Roſes, or out of the ſirrop of Roſes, it is a moſt excellent ſcouring alſo, onely it will for an houre or two make the Hawke ſomewhat ſickiſh. If you giue your Hawke a little *Aloes-Cicatrine*, as much as a Beane wrapt vp in her meate, it is a moſt ſoueraigne ſcouring, and doth not onely auoyde greaſe, but alſo killeth all ſorts of wormes whatſoeuer.

Of ſcourings.

If your Hawke by ouer-flying, or too ſoone flying, be heated and inflamed in her body, as they are much ſubiect thereuuto: you ſhall then to coole their bodies, giue them Stones. Theſe Stones are very fine white pibbles, lying in the ſands of grauelly riuers, the bigneſſe

neſſe whereof you may chuſe according to the bigneſſe of your Hawke, as ſome no bigger then a Beane, and thoſe be for *Merlins* or *Hobbies*; ſome as bigge as two Beanes, and they are for Faulcons-gentle, Lanners, and ſuch like; and ſome much bigger then they, which are for Gerfaulcons, or ſuch like. And theſe Stones if they be full of creſts and welts, they are the better, for the rougheſt ſtone is the beſt, ſo it be ſmooth & not greety. And you ſhall vnderſtand that Stones are moſt proper for long-wing'd Hawkes, and the number which you ſhall giue at the moſt muſt neuer exceede fifteene, for ſeauen is a good number, ſo is nine or eleauen, according as you finde the Hawkes heate, more or leſſe: and theſe Stones muſt euer be giuen out of faire water, hauing beene before very well pickt and trim'd from all durt or filthineſſe. And thus much of Hawkes Caſtings, Scowrings, and Stones.

CHAP. II.

Of Impoſtumes in Hawkes.

IF your Hawke haue any impoſtume riſing vpon her, which is apparant to be ſeene, you ſhall take ſweet *Rayſins*, and boyle them in *Wine*, and then cruſhing them lay them warme to the ſore, and it will both ripen and heale it: onely it ſhall be good to ſcoure your Hawke very well inwardly, for that will abate the fluxe of all euill humours.

CHAP. III.

Of all ſorts of ſore Eyes.

FOr any ſore Eye there is nothing better then to take the iuyce of ground-*Iuie*, and drop it into the Eye. But if any filme or web be growne before you vſe this medicine, then you ſhall take *Ginger* finely ſeyrſt, and blow it into the Eye, and it will breake the filme, then vſe the iuyce of *Iuie*, and it will weare it away.

CHAP. IIII.

Of the Pantas in Hawkes.

The cure. THe Pantas is a ſtopping or ſhortneſſe of winde in Hawkes. And the cure is, to giue her the ſcowring of *Selladine*, and the oyle of *Roſes*, and then to waſh her meate in the decoction of *Tuſsilaginis*, and it will helpe her.

CHAP. V.

Of caſting the Gorge.

THis is when a Hawke, either through meate which ſhe cannot digeſt, or through ſurfet in feeding, caſteth vp the meate which ſhe hath eaten, which is moſt

The cure. dangerous: And the onely way to cure her is to keepe her faſting, and to feede her with a very little at once of warme bloudy meate, as not aboue halfe a Sparrow at a time, and be ſure neuer to feede her againe till ſhe haue indued the firſt.

CHAP. VI.

Of all ſorts of Wormes or Fylanders in Hawkes.

VVOrmes or Fylanders, which are a kinde of wormes in Hawkes, are either inward or outward: Inward, as in the guts or intrailes, or outward, as in any ioynt or member: if they be inward, the ſcowring of *Aloes* is excellent to kill them; but if they be outward, then you ſhall bathe the place with the iuyce of the hearbe *Ameos* mixt with *Hony*.

CHAP. VII.

Of all ſwellings in Hawkes feete, and of the Pin in the foote.

FOr the Pinne in the ſole of the Hawkes foote, or for any ſwelling vpon the foote, whether it be ſoft or hard, there is not any thing more ſoueraigne, then to bathe it in *Patch-greaſe* moulten and applied to exceeding hot, and then to fold a fine Cambricke rag dipt in the ſame greaſe about the ſore.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the breaking of a Pounce.

THis is a very dangerous hurt in Hawkes, especially in Gerfaulcons; for if you shall breake or riue her Pounce, or but coape it so short that she bleede, though it be very little, yet it will indanger her life. The cure therefore is presently vpon the hurt with a hot wyer to seare it till the bloud staunch, and then to drop about it *Pitch* of Burgundy, and *Waxe* mixt together, or for want thereof a little hard Marchants *Waxe*, and that will both heale it, and make the Pounce grow. The cure.

CHAP. IX.

Of bones broke, or out of ioynt.

IF your Hawke haue any bone broke or misplaced; you shall after you haue set it, bathe it with the oyle of *Mandrag*, and *Swallowes*, mixt together, and then splent it, and in nine daies it will be knit, and haue gotten strength.

CHAP. X.

Of inward bruisings in Hawkes.

IF your Hawke either by stooping amongst trees, or by the incounter of some fowle, get any inward bruise, which you shall know by the blacknesse or bloodinesse of their muts, you shall then annoynt her meate euery time you feede her with *Sperma-Cœta* till her mutes be cleare againe, and let her meate be warme and bloody.

CHAP. XI.

Of killing of Lice.

IF your Hawke be troubled with Lyce, which is a generall infirmitie, and apparant, for you shall see them creepe all ouer on the outside of her feathers if she stand but in the ayre of the fire. You shall bathe her all ouer in warme *Water* and *Pepper* small beaten, but be sure that the *Water* be not too hot, for that is dangerous.

CHAP. XII.
Of the Rye in Hawkes.

THis diſeaſe of the Rye in Hawkes proceedeth from two cauſes; the one is cold and poze in the head, the other is foule and moſt vncleanely feeding, the Faulconer being negligent to ſeake and cleanſe his Hawks beake and nares, but ſuffering the bloud and filthineſſe of meate to ſticke and cleaue thereunto. For indeede, the infirmitie is nothing elſe but a ſtopping vp of the nares, by meanes whereof the Hawke not being able to caſt and auoide the corruption of her head, it turnes to putrifaction, and in ſhort ſpace kils the Hawke: and this diſeaſe is a great deale more incident to ſhort-wing'd Hawkes then to long. The ſignes whereof are apparant by the ſtopping of the nares. And the cure is to let your Hawke tyer much vpon ſinewie and bony meat, as the rumps of Mutton (the fat being taken away) or the pynions of the wings of fowle, either being well lapt in a good handfull of *Parſeley*, and forcing her to ſtraine hard in the tearing of the ſame, and with much diligence to cleanſe and waſh her beake cleane with water after her feeding, eſpecially if her meate were warme and bloudy.

The cure.

CHAP. XIII.
Of the Frounce.

THe Frounce is a cankerous vlcer in a Hawks mouth, got by ouerflying, or other inflamation proceeding from the inward parts; foule and vncleane food is alſo a great ingenderer of this diſeaſe. The ſignes are a ſoreneſſe in the Hawkes mouth, which ſore will be fur'd and couer'd ouer with white ſcurfe or ſuch like filthineſſe; alſo if the vlcer be deepe and ill, the Hawke will winde and turne her head awrie, making her beake ſtand vpright: and the cure is to take *Allome*, and hauing beaten

The cure.

ten it to fine powder, mixe it with strong *Wine-vinegar* till it be somewhat thicke, and then wash and rubbe the sore therewith till it be raw, and that the scurfe be cleane taken away. Then take the iuyce of *Lolliam*, and the iuyce of *Radish*, and mixing it with *Salt*, annoynt the sore therewith, and in few daies it will cure it.

CHAP. XIIII.

Of the Rhume.

THe Rhume is a continuall running or dropping at the Hawkes Nares, proceeding from a generall cold, or else from ouer-flying, and then a sodaine cold taken thereupon: it stoppeth the head, and breeds much corruption therein; and the signes are the dropping before said, and a generall heauinesse, and sometimes a swelling of the head. The cure is to take the iuyce of *Beets*, and squert it oft into the Hawkes nares. Then when you feede her, wash her meate in the iuyce of *Broomewort*, and it will quickly purge, & set her sound. The cure.

CHAP. XV.

Of the Formicas in Hawkes.

THe Formicas in Hawkes is a hard horne growing vpon the beake of a Hawke, ingendred by a poysonous and cankerous worme, which fretting the skin and tender yellow welt betweene the head and the beake, occasioneth that hard horne or excression to grow and offend the Bird. The signe is the apparent sight of the horne. And the cure is to take a little of a *Buls* gall, and beating it with *Aloes*, annoynt the Hawkes beake therewith Morning and Euening, and it will in very few daies take the horne away. The cure.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the Fistula in Hawkes.

THe Fistula in Hawkes is a cankerous hollow vlcer in any part of a Hawkes body, as it is in men, beasts,

or any other creature: the signes are a continuall mattering or running of the sore, and a thin sharpe water like lie, which as it fals from the same will fret the sound parts as it goeth. The cure is with a fine small wyer, little stronger then a Virginall wyer, and wrapt close about with a soft sleaued silke, and the poynt blunt and soft, to search the hollownesse and crookednesse of the vlcer, which the pliantnesse of the wyer will easily doe, and then hauing found out the bottome thereof, draw forth the wyer, and according to the bignesse of the Orifice, make a tent of fine lint being wet, which may likewise bend as the wyer did, and be within a very little as long as the vlcer is deepe, for to tent it to the full length is ill, and will rather increase then diminish the Fistula: and therefore euer as the Fistula heales, you must make the tent shorter and shorter. But to the purpose, when you haue made your tent fit, you shall first take strong *Allome* water, and with a small seringe squirt the sore three or foure times therewith, for that will clense, drie, and scoure euery hollownesse in the vlcer: then take the tent and annoint it with the iuyce of the hearbe *Roberte*, *Vinegar*, and *Allome* mixt together, and it will drie vp the sore.

The cure.

CHAP. XVII.

Of the priuie euill in Hawkes.

THe priuie euill in Hawkes is a secret hart-sickenesse procured either by ouer-flying, corrupt food, cold, or other disorderly keeping, but most especially for want of Stones or casting in the due season: the signes are heauinesse of head, and countenance, euill enduing of her meate, and foule blacke mutings. The cure is to take Morning and Eueninga good piece of a warme *Sheepes* heart, and steeping it either in new *Asses Milke*, or new *Goats Milke*, or for want of both the new *Milke* of a red

The cure.

Cow

Cow, and with the ſame to feede your Hawke till you ſee her ſtrength and luſt recouered.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of wounds in Hawkes.

HAwkes, by the croſſe incounters of Fowles, eſpecially the Heron, by ſtooping amongſt Buſhes, Thornes, Trees, and by diuers ſuch accidents, doe many times catch ſore and moſt grieuous wounds: the ſignes whereof, are the outward apparance of the ſame. And the cure is, if they be long and deepe, and in places that you may conueniently, firſt to ſtitch them vp, and then to taint them vp with a little ordinary *Balſamum*, and it is a preſent remedy. But if it be in ſuch a place as you cannot come to ſtitch it vp, you ſhall then onely take a little *Lint*, and dip it in the iuyce of the hearbe called *Mouſeare*, and apply it to the ſoare, and it will in ſhort ſpace heale it. But if it be in ſuch a place as you can by no meanes binde any thing thereunto, you ſhall then onely annoynt or bathe the place with the aforeſaid iuyce, and it will heale and dry vp the ſame in very ſhort time; the iuyce of the greene hearbe, called with vs, *Engliſh Tobacco*, will likewiſe doe the ſame: for it hath a very ſpeedy courſe in healing and clenſing, as hath beene approued by diuers of the beſt Faulconers of this Kingdome, and other nations. The cure.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Apoplexie, or falling euill in Hawkes.

THe Apoplexie or falling euill in Hawkes, is a certaine vertigo or dizineſſe of the braine, proceeding from the oppreſſion of cold humors, which do for a certaine ſpace numbe, & as it were mortifie the ſenſes: the ſignes are a ſodaine turning vp of the Hawkes head, and falling from her pearch without baiting, but onely with a generall trembling ouer all the body, and lying ſo, as

it

it were, in a traunce a little ſpace, ſhe preſently recouereth, and riſeth vp againe, but is ſicke and heauy many houres after. The cure therefore is, to gather the hearbe *Aſterion*, when the Moone is in the Waine, and in the ſigne *Virgo*, and taking the iuyce thereof to waſh your Hawkes meate therein, and ſo feede her, and it hath beene found a moſt ſoueraigne medecine.

The cure.

CHAP. XX.

Of the purging of Hawkes.

THere is nothing more needfull to Hawkes then purgations and clenſings; for they are much ſubiect to fat and fouleneſſe of body inwardly, and their exerciſe being much and violent, if there be neglect, and that their glut be not taken away, it will breede ſickneſſe and death; therefore it is the part of euery skilfull Faulconer to vnderſtand how, and when to purge his Hawke, which is generally euer before ſhe be brought to flying: and the moſt vſualleſt ſeaſon for the ſame, is before the beginning of *Autumne*; for commonly knowing-Gentlemen will not flie at the Partridge till Corne be from the ground; and if he prepare for the Riuer earely, he will likewiſe begin about that ſeaſon: the beſt purgation then that you can giue your Hawke, is *Aloes Cicatrine*, wrapt vp in warme meate, the quantitie of a French Peaſe, and ſo giuen the Hawke to eate euer the next morning after ſhe hath flowne at any traine, or taken other exerciſe, whereby ſhe might break or diſſolue the greaſe within her.

CHAP. XXI.

For a Hawke that cannot mute.

IF your Hawke cannot mute, as it is a common infirmity which happeneth vnto them; you ſhall take the leane of Porke, being newly kild, whileſt it is warme,

to

to the quantitie of two Wall-nuts, and lapping a little *Aloes* therein, giue it the Hawke to eate, and it will presently helpe her. There be diuers good Faulconers, in this case, which will take the roots of *Selandine*, and hauing clenſed it, and cut it into little ſquare pieces as big as Peaſe, doe ſteepe it in the Oyle of Roſes, and ſo make the Hawke ſwallow downe three or foure of them: and ſure this is very good and wholſome, onely it will make the Hawke exceeding ſicke for two or three houres after. Neither muſt the Hawke be in any weake ſtate of body, when this latter Medicine is giuen her. Alſo, you muſt obſerue to keepe your Hawke at thoſe times exceeding warme, and much on your fiſt, and to feede her moſt with warme Birds, leaſt otherwiſe you clung and dry vp her intrailes too much, which is both dangerous and mortall.

CHAP. XXII.

The aſſuredſt ſigne to know when a Hawke is ſicke.

HAwkes are generally of ſuch a ſtout, ſtrong, and vnyeelding nature, that they will many times couer and conceale their ſickneſſes ſo long till they be growne to that extreamitie, that no helpe of phyſicke or other knowledge can auaile for their ſafeties: for when the countenance, or decay of ſtomacke, which are the ordinary outward faces of infirmities, appeare, then commonly is the diſeaſe paſt remedy: therefore to preuent that euill, and to know ſickneſſe whileſt it may be cured, you ſhall take your Hawke, and turning vp her traine, if you ſee that her tuell or fundament either ſwelleth or looketh red, or if her eyes or nares likewiſe be of a fiery complexion, it is a moſt infallible ſigne that the Hawke is ſicke, and much out of temper.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Feuer in Hawkes.

HAwkes are as much ſubiect to Feuers, as any creatures whatſoeuer, and for the moſt part they proceede from ouerflying, or other extraordinary heats, mixt with ſodaine coldes, giuen them by the negligence of vnskilfull keepers: and the cure is, to ſet her in a coole place, vpon a pearch wrapt about with wet cloathes, and feede her oft with a little at a time of Chickens fleſh, ſteeped in water, wherein hath beene ſoaked Cowcumber ſeeds. But if you finde by the ſtopping of her nares or head, that ſhe is offended more with cold then heate, then you ſhall ſet her in a warme place, & feede her with the bloody fleſh of Pidgeons, waſht either in white wine, or in water, wherein hath beene boyld either Sage, Marioram, or Camomill.

The cure.

CHAP. XXIIII.

To helpe a Hawke that cannot digeſt or indewe her Meate.

IF your Hawke be hard of digeſtion, and neither can turne it ouer, nor emptie her panell, which is very often ſeene, you ſhall then take the heart of a Frog, and thruſt it downe into her throate, and pull it backe againe by a thread faſtened thereunto once or twice ſodainely, and it will either make her indewe or caſt her gorge preſently.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the Gout in Hawkes.

HAwkes, eſpecially thoſe which are free and ſtrong ſtrikers, are infinitely ſubiect to the Gout, which is a ſwelling, knotting, and contracting of a Hawkes feet. The cure thereof is, to take two or three drops of blood from her thye-veine, a little aboue her knee, and then annoynt her feet with the iuyce of the hearbe *Holyhocke*, and let all her Pearch be annointed alſo with *Tallow*,

The cure.

Tallow, & the iuyce of that hearbe mixt together. Now, if this diſeaſe (as oft it happeneth) be in a Hawkes wing, then you ſhall take two or three drops of blood from the veine vnder her wing, and then annoynt the pinions and inſide thereof with *Vnguentum de Althea*, made very warme, which you may buy of euery Pothecary.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the ſtanching of Blood.

IT is a knowne experience amongſt the beſt Faulconers, that if the Gerfaulcon ſhall but looſe two or three drops of blood, it is mortall, and the Hawke will die ſodainely after; which to preuent, if the blood proceede from any pounce, which is moſt ordinary, then vpon the inſtant hurt, you ſhall take a little hard Marchants Waxe, and drop it vpon the ſoare, and it will preſently ſtop it; if it be vpon any other part of the Hawkes body, you ſhall clap thereunto a little of the ſoft downe of a Haire, and it will immediately ſtanch it; and without theſe two things a good Faulconer ſhould neuer goe, for they are to be vſed in a moment. And thus much of the Hawke, and her diſeaſes.

The end of the Hawke.

Of Bees.

CHAPTER. I.

Of the nature, ordering, and preseruation of Bees.

The nature of the Bee.

OF all the creatures which are behouefull for the vse of man, there is none more necessary, wholesome, or more profitable then the Bee, nor any lesse troublesome, or lesse chargeable. To speake then first of the nature of Bees; it is a creature gentle, louing, and familiar about the man which hath the ordering of them, so he come neate, sweet, and cleanely amongst them; otherwise, if hee haue strong, and ill-smelling sauours about him, they are curst and malicious, and will sting spitefully: they are exceeding industrious and much giuen to labour: they haue a kinde of gouernement amongst themselues, as it were a well ordered common-wealth: euery one obaying and following their King or commander, whose voyce (if you lay your eare to the Hiue) you shall distinguish from the rest, being louder and greater, and beating with a more solemne measure. They delight to liue amongst the sweetest hearbs and Flowers that may be; especially Fenell, and Walgilly-flowers, and therefore their best dwellings are in Gardens: and in these Gardens, or neere adioyning thereunto, would be diuers Fruit trees growing, chiefely Plumbe

trees,

trees, or Peach trees, in which, when they caſt, they may knit, without taking any farre flight, or wandering to finde out their reſt: this Garden alſo would be well fenced, that no Swine nor other Cattell may come therein, as well for ouerthrowing their Hiues, as alſo for offending them with other ill ſauours. They are alſo very tender, and may by no meanes endure any colde: wherefore you muſt haue a great reſpect to haue their houſes exceeding warme, cloſe, and tight, both to keepe out the froſts and ſnowes, as alſo the wet and raine; which if it once enter into the Hiue, it is a preſent deſtruction.

Of the Bee-Hiue.

To ſpeake then of the Bee-hiue, you ſhall know there be diuers opinions touching the ſame, according to the cuſtomes and natures of Countries; for in the Champaine Countries, where there is very little ſtore of woods, they make their Hiues of long Rye-ſtraw, the roules being ſowed together with Briers; and theſe Hiues are large and deepe, and euen proportioned like a Sugar-loafe, and croſſe-bard within, with flat ſplints of wood, both aboue and vnder the middeſt part: in other Champain Countries, where there wanteth Rye-ſtraw, they make them of Wheat-ſtraw, as in the Weſt countries: and theſe Hiues are of a good compaſſe, but very low and flat, which is nought: for a Hiue is euer better for his largeneſſe, and keepeth out rayne beſt, when it is ſharpeſt. In the wood-Countries they make them of clouen haſſels watteld about broad ſplints of Aſh, and ſo formed as before I ſaid, like a *Sugar-loafe*. And theſe Hiues are of all other the beſt, ſo they be large and ſmooth within; for the ſtraw Hiue is ſubiect to breede Mice, and nothing deſtroyeth Bees ſooner then they, yet you muſt be gouerned by your ability, and ſuch things as the ſoyle affoords.

The trimming of the Hiue.

Now for the wood-Hiue, which is the best, you shall thus trimme and prepare it for your Bees: you shall first make a stiffe morter of Lime and Cow-dung, mixed together; and then hauing crosse-barred the Hiue within, dawbe the outside of the Hiue with the morter, at least three inches thicke, downe close vnto the stone, so that the least ayre may not come in: then taking a Rye-sheafe, or Wheat-sheafe that is new thresh't, and binding the eares together in one lumpe, put it ouer the Hiue, and so as it were thatch it all ouer, and fixe it close to the Hiue with an old hoope, or garth, and this will keepe the Hiue inwardly as warme as may be: also before you lodge any Bee in your Hiue, you shall perfume it with *Iuniper*, and rubbe it all within with *Fenell*, *Isope*, and *Time-flowers*, and also all the stone vpon which the Hiue shall stand.

The placing of Hiues.

Now for the placing of your Hiues, you shall take three long thicke stakes, cut smooth and plaine vpon the heads, and driue them into the earth triangularwise, so that they may be about two foot aboue the ground: then lay ouer them a broad smooth pauing stone, which may extend euery way ouer the stakes about halfe a foot and vpon the stone set your Hiue, being lesse in compasse then the stone by more then six inches euery way; and see the dore of your Hiue stand directly vpon the rising of the Morning-Sunne inclining a little vnto the South-ward: and be sure to haue your Hiues well sheltred from the North-winds, and generally from all tempestuous weather: for which purpose if you haue sheds to draw ouer them in the Winter, it is so much the better. And you shall place your Hiues in orderly rowes one before another, keeping cleane Allies between them euery way, so as you may walke and view each by it selfe seuerally.

Now

Now for the casting of your Bees, it is earlier or later in the yeare, according to the strength and goodnesse of the stocke, or the warmth of the weather. The vsuall time for casting is from the beginning of *May* till the middle of *July*: and in all that time you must haue a vigilant eye, or else some seruant, to watch their rising, least they flie away, and knit in some obscure place farre from your knowledge. Yet if you please you may know which Hiues are ready to cast a night before they doe cast, by laying your eare after Sunne-set to the Hiue, and if you heare the Master-Bee aboue all the rest, in a higher and more solemne note, or if you see them lye forth vpon the stone, and cannot get into the Hiue, then be sure that stocke will cast within few houres after. As soone as you perceiue the Swarme to rise, and are got vp into the ayre (which will commonly be in the height and heat of the Sunne) you shall take a brasse Bason, Pan, or Candlestick, and make a tinckling noise thereupon, and they are so delighted with Musicke, that by the sound thereof, they will presently knit vpon some braunch or bough of a tree. Then when they are all vpon one cluster, you shall take a new sweete Hiue well dreft, and rub'd with *Hony* and *Fenell*, and shake them all into the Hiue, then hauing spread a faire sheete vpon the ground, set the Hiue thereon, and couer it all cleane ouer close with the sheete, and so let it stand till after Sunne-set, at which time the Bees being gathered vp to the top of the Hiue (as their nature is) you shall set them vpon the stone hauing rub'd it well with *Fenell*, and then daube it close round about with *Lime* and *Dung* mixt together, and onely leaue them a doore or two to issue out and in at. There be some stockes which will cast twice or thrice, and foure times in a yeere, but it is not so good, for it will

The casting of Bees and ordering of Swarmes.

will weaken the ſtocke too much, therefore to keepe your ſtockes in ſtrength and goodneſſe, it is good not to ſuffer any to caſt aboue twice at the moſt. Againe, you ſhall with pieces of bricke, or other ſmooth ſtones, raiſe the ſtocke in the night three or foure inches aboue the ſtone, and then dawbe it cloſe againe, and the Bees finding houſe-roome will fall to worke within, and not caſt at all; and then will that ſtocke be worth two others; and in the ſame manner, if you had the yeere before any ſmall ſwarmes, which are likely to caſt this yeere; or if you haue any earely ſwarmes this yeere, which are likely to caſt at the latter end of the yeere: both which are often found to be the deſtruction of the ſtockes: in either of theſe caſes, you ſhall inlarge the Hiue as it is before ſaid, by rayſing it vp from the ſtone, and it will not onely keepe them from caſting, but make the ſtocke better, and of much more profit, for that Hiue euer which is of the moſt waight is of the beſt price.

Of ſelling Hiues.

Now when you haue mark't out thoſe old ſtockes which you intend to ſell, (for the oldeſt is fitteſt for that purpoſe) you ſhall know that the beſt time to take them, is at *Michaelmas*, before any froſts hinder their labour: and you ſhall take them euer from the ſtone in the dark of night, when the ayre is cold, and either drowne them in water, or ſmoother them with *Fusbals*, for to chaſe them from their Hiues, as ſome doe, is nought, becauſe all ſuch Bees as are thus frighted from their Hiues doe turne robbers and ſpoyle other ſtocks, becauſe that time of the yeere will not ſuffer them to labour and get their owne liuings.

The preſeruation of weake ſtocks.

Now if you haue any weake Swarmes which comming late in the yeere cannot gather ſufficient of Winter prouiſion; in this caſe, you ſhall feede ſuch ſtocks by daily ſmearing their ſtone before the place of their go-

ing

ing in and out with *Honey* and *Rose-water* mixt together, and so you shall continue to doe all the strength of Winter, till the warmth of the Spring and the Sunne-shine bring forth Flowers for them to labour vpon. You shall continually looke that no Mice, Dares, and such like vermine breed about Hiues, for they are poysonous, and will make Bees forsake their Hiues.

Now lastly, if any of your stockes happen to die in the Winter (as amongst many, some must quaile) you shall not by any meanes stirre the stocke, but let it remaine till the Spring, that you see your Bees beginne to grow busie; then take vp the dead stocke, and trimme it cleane from all filth, but by no meanes stirre or cruth any of the Combes: then dash the Combes, and besprinckle them, and besmeare all the inside of the Hiue with *Honey*, *Rose-water*, and the iuyce of *Fennell*, mixt together, and dawbe all the stone therewith. Also then set downe the Hiue againe, and dawbe it as if it had neuer beene stirred, and be well assured that the first Swarme which shall rise, either of your owne, or of any neighbour of yours within the compasse of a mile, it will knit in no place, but within that Hiue, and such a stocke will be worth fiue others, because they finde halfe their worke finisht at their first entrance into the Hiue, and this hath beene many times approued by those of the most approuedst experience. And thus much touching the Bee and his Nature. An excellent secret.

Of Fishing.

CHAPTER I.

Of Fishing in generall, and first of the making of the Fish pond.

FOr as much as great Riuers doe generally belong either to the King, or the particular Lords of seuerall Mannors, and that it is onely the Fish-pond which belongeth to priuate persons, I will as a thing most belonging to the generall profit, here intreate of Fish-ponds. And first touching the making of them, you shall vnderstand that the grounds most fit to be cast into Fishponds, are those which are either marish, boggie, or full of Springs, and indeede most vnfit either for grazing, or any other vse of better profit. And of these grounds, that which is full of cleare Springs will yeelde the best water: that which is marish will feede Fish best, and that which is boggy will best defend the Fish from stealing. Hauing then such a piece of waste ground, and being determined to cast it into a Fishpond, you shall first, by small trenches, draw all the Springs or moyst veines into one place, and so draine the rest of the ground, and then hauing mark't out that part which you meane to make the head of your Pond, which although it be the lowest part in the

true.

true leuell of the ground, yet you must make it the highest in the eye; you shall first cut the trench of your Flood-gate, so as the water may haue a swift fall, when you meane at any time to let it out; and then on each side of the trench driue in great stakes of sixe foote in length, and sixe inches square, of Oake, Ashe, or Elme, but Elme is the best: and these you must driue in rowes within foure foote one of the other, at least foure foote into the earth, as broad, and as farre off each side the Floud-gate as you intend the head of your Pond shall goe: then beginne to digge your Pond of such compasse as your ground will conueniently giue you leaue, and all the earth you dig out of the Pond, you shall carry and throw amongst the stakes, and with strong rammers ramme the earth hard betweene them til you haue couered all the stakes; then driue in as many moe new stakes beside the heads of the first, and then ram more earth ouer and aboue them also; and thus doe, with stakes aboue stakes, till you haue brought the head and sides to such a conuenient height as is fitting. And in all this worke haue an especiall care that you make the inside of your bankes so smooth, euen and strong, that no current of the water may weare the earth from the stakes. You shall digge your Pond not aboue eight foot deepe, and so as it may carry not aboue sixe foote water. You shall paue all the bottome, and banckes of the Pond with large sods of Flotgrasse, which naturally growes vnder water, for it is a great feeder of Fish: and you shall lay them very close together, and pinne them downe fast with small stakes and windings. You shall vpon one side of the Pond, in the bottome, stake fast diuers Bauens or Faggots of bruth wood, wherein your fish shall cast their spawne, for that will defend it from destruction; and at another place you shall lay

sods vpon sods, with the grasse sides together, in the bottome of the Pond, for that will nourish and breed Eeles: and if you stick sharpe stakes slant-wise by euery side of the Pond, that will keepe theeues from robbing them. When you haue thus made your Ponds, and haue let in the water, you shall then store them. Carpe, Breame and Tench, by themselues; and Pike, Pearch, Eele, and Tench by themselues: for the Tench being the Fishes Physition is seldome deuoured: also in all Ponds you shall put good store of Roch, Dace, Loch, and Menow; for they are both foode for the greater Fishes, and also not vncomely in any good mans dish. You shall to euery melter put three spawners, and some put fiue, and in three yeeres the increase will be great, but in fiue hardly to be destroyed. And thus much for Ponds and their storings.

CHAP. II.

Of the taking of all sorts of Fish, with Nets, or otherwise.

IF you will take Fish with little or no trouble, you shall take of *Salarmoniake* a quarter of an ounce, of young *Chiues* as much, and as much of a Calues Kell, and beate them in a Morter till it be all one substance, and then make Pellets thereof, and cast them into any corner of the Pond, and it will draw thither all the Carpe, Breame, Cheuin, or Barbell, that are within the water, then cast your shoue-net beyond them, and you shall take choyse at your pleasure. If you will take Roch, Dace, or any small kinde of Fish, take Wine-Lees and mixe it with Oyle, and hang it in a Chimney-corner, till it be drie, or looke blacke, and then putting it into the water; they will come so abundantly to it, that you may take them with your hand. If you will take Trout, or Grailing, take two

pound

pound of Wheate-bran, halfe so much of white Peaſe, and mixing them with ſtrong Brine, beate it till it come to a perfect paſte; then put pellets thereof into any corner of the water, and they will reſort thither, ſo as you may caſt your net about them at your pleaſure. But if you will take either Pearch or Pike, you ſhall take ſome of a beaſtes Liuer, blacke Snailes, yellow Butter, Flies, Hogges blood, and Opoponax, beate them all together, and hauing made a paſte thereof, put it into the water, and bee aſſured that as many as are within fortie paces thereof will preſently come thither, and you may take them at your pleaſure. Laſtly, if you take eight drammes of Cocke ſtones, and the kirnels of Pynapple trees burnt, twice ſo much, and beate them well together, and make round balles thereof, and put it into the water, either freſh or ſalt, any Salmon or great Fiſh will preſently reſort thither: and you may take them either with net or otherwiſe. Alſo, it is a moſt approued experiment, that if you take bottles made of Hay, and greene Oziers, or Willow mixt together, and ſincke them downe in the midſt of your Pond, or by the banke ſides, and ſo let them reſt two or three daies, hauing a corde ſo faſtened vnto them that you may twitch them vpon land at your pleaſure: and beleeue it, all the good Eeles which are in the Pond will come into thoſe Bottles, and you ſhall take them moſt abundantly: and if you pleaſe to baite thoſe bottles, by binding vp Sheepes guts, or other garbage of beaſts within them, the Eeles will come ſooner, and you may draw them oftner, and with better aſſurance. There be other wayes beſides theſe to take Eeles, as with Weeles, with the Fele-ſpeare, or with bobbing for them with great wormes; but they are ſo generally

knowne and practised, and so much inferiour to this already shewed, that I hold it a needlesse and vaine labour to trouble your eares with the repetition of the same; and the rather, sith in this worke I haue laboured onely to declare the secrets of euery knowledge, and not to runne into any large circumstance of those things which are most common and familiar to all men.

And thus much of Fish, and their generall knowledge.

FINIS.